

STUDIES IN PROOF THEORY  
LECTURE NOTES

---

GERHARD JÄGER

THEORIES FOR ADMISSIBLE SETS  
A UNIFYING APPROACH TO PROOF THEORY



BIBLIOPOLIS



STUDIES IN PROOF THEORY  
LECTURE NOTES

2

---

# STUDIES IN PROOF THEORY

## *Managing Editors*

C. CELLUCCI    D. PRAWITZ  
J.-Y. GIRARD    H. SCHWICHTENBERG

## *Advisory Editors*

P. ACZEL	P. MARTIN-LÖF
C. BÖHM	G. E. MINC
W. BUCHHOLZ	W. POHLERS
E. ENGELER	D. SCOTT
S. FEFERMAN	W. SIEG
CH. GOAD	C. SMORYNSKI
W. HOWARD	R. STATMAN
G. HUET	S. TAKASU
D. LEivant	G. TAKEUTI

GERHARD JÄGER

THEORIES FOR ADMISSIBLE SETS  
A UNIFYING APPROACH TO PROOF THEORY



BIBLIOPOLIS

**ISBN 88-7088-149-0**

© 1986 by «Bibliopolis, edizioni di filosofia e scienze»  
Napoli, via Arangio Ruiz 83

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any  
form or by any means without permission in writing from the publisher

Printed in Italy by «L.V.G.»  
Azzate (Varese)

## C O N T E N T S

Introduction	1
§0. Preliminaries	16
§1. Admissible sets	32
§2. The admissible cover and extension of a theory	52
§3. The theory KP <sub>u</sub> and its restrictions	62
§4. Theories for iterated admissible sets without foundation	84
§5. Hyperarithmetic sets in ATR <sub>0</sub>	105
§6. $\Gamma_0$ revisited	116
§7. $\Pi^1_1$ comprehension, (Lim) and $(I \in)$	125
§8. Theories for recursively inaccessible universes	137
Appendix	143
References	162



## INTRODUCTION.

In a series of papers between 1878 and 1897 Cantor created the theory of infinite sets. Although his ideas were first met with scepticism and distrust, the last decade of the previous century proved their importance for mathematics.

Cantor's conception of set, however, was too naive, and several antinomies were discovered, the most famous one due to Russell. Fortunately all these antinomies were of logical-foundational character and did not directly affect the mathematical consequences of set theory. In order to rescue set theory for mathematics, many logicians therefore started to think more closely about the nature of sets and the principles of set existence and set generation.

Various systems of set theory emerged from this work which all avoided the known antinomies and were strong enough to formalize abstract mathematical reasoning. Today Zermelo-Fraenkel set theory ZF with or without the axiom of choice is the generally accepted formalism and can be considered as the 'official' framework for doing mathematics.

The situation was less clear at the beginning of this century. Many systems of set theory were available, all without apparent inconsistencies but also without guarantee that inconsistencies would never appear. Several mathematicians therefore thought that to develop mathematics in these systems was to build mathematics on uncertain foundations.

As a reaction, Brouwer and his school tried to banish

the critical principles and to allow only that part of mathematical reasoning which could be justified constructively.

Hilbert, on the other hand, was convinced of the importance of the nonconstructive, abstract framework provided by set theory. He wished to justify the use of abstract techniques by showing that their use never leads to contradictions.

His program can be sketched as follows:

- (i) Axiomatize and formalize all of mathematics.
- (ii) Show that applications of the axioms and rules of inference never lead to contradictions.

In (ii) one has only to manipulate with finite proof trees, and so Hilbert had hoped that this step could be carried through with purely finitistic methods accepted by everybody. To realize this program proof procedures had to be investigated. On this account, Hilbert called the new discipline 'Proof Theory'.

In 1930 Gödel showed that Hilbert's program does not work. His second incompleteness theorem says that a consistent theory  $\text{Th}$  which contains a reasonable amount of number theory cannot prove its own consistency.

Although Gödel had devastated Hilbert's program, proof theory was not dead. The decisive new idea came from Gentzen [27]. In this paper he gave a consistency proof for number theory which was finite modulo transfinite induction along a well-ordering of order-type  $\epsilon_0$ . He also showed that well-orderings of smaller order-types do not suffice. Hence  $\epsilon_0$

can be considered as the ordinal which characterizes that part of number theory which goes beyond finitary reasoning or, in other words,  $\epsilon_0$  characterizes the infinitary content of number theory. For the proof Gentzen uses the technique of cut elimination, which became one of the standard instruments in proof theory. Gentzen's methods and ideas were later taken up, modified and extended by other logicians in order to study various formal systems.

Although Zermelo-Fraenkel set theory is the established framework for mathematics and (practically) nobody doubts its consistency, there are good reasons for considering weaker theories:

1. ZF is a theory which presupposes a Platonistic concept of set. It seems impossible to give a philosophical justification for the set existence axioms of ZF which is not based on a Platonistic world view.
2. More serious from the point of view of mathematics is the fact that ZF heavily violates the principle of parsimony. Most theorems of ordinary mathematics can already be proved in theories much weaker than ZF.
3. ZF is a formalism developed for studying large ordinals and cardinals and does not pay much attention to sets of low degree of constructibility. ZF has very few natural models, and therefore these models only give very limited information about the theorems of ZF.

Proof theory nowadays is concerned with the investi-

gation of the proof possibilities of mathematical systems. One aspect of this research is the ordinal analysis of formal theories. The proof-theoretic ordinal  $|Th|$  of a theory  $Th$  is the least ordinal  $\alpha$ , such that the consistency of  $Th$  can be proved in Peano arithmetic PA plus the scheme of transfinite induction along a primitive recursive standard well-ordering of order-type  $\alpha$ . In section 2.3 we present a different definition of proof-theoretic ordinal, but both notions agree in all relevant cases. Experience has shown that the proof-theoretic ordinal  $|Th|$  is a very good measure for the strength of  $Th$ , so that we call  $|Th|$  the proof-theoretic strength of  $Th$ .

Historically logicians first carried through the ordinal analysis of subsystems of second order arithmetic  $A_2$  as defined in section 0.3. Roughly speaking,  $A_2$  can be considered as the subsystem of ZF where we speak about natural numbers and sets of natural numbers only. It makes sense to study subsystems of  $A_2$ , since an old observation, probably established by Hilbert, Bernays and Weyl, says, that most of ordinary mathematics can be carried through in subsystems of  $A_2$ . This, however, can be accomplished only by using a heavy coding machinery.

Later the interest shifted to theories for iterated inductive definitions and their relations to subsystems of  $A_2$ . We do not quote special results here but refer to the textbooks of Schütte [47] and Takeuti [58] and to the recent Lecture Notes of Buchholz-Feferman-Pohlers-Sieg [4].

Feferman's preface in [4] contains a comprehensive description of the development during the last 20 years. Important contributions to this field of logic have been made by (in alphabetical order): Buchholz, Feferman, Friedman, Howard, Kreisel, Pohlers, Schütte, Sieg, Tait, Takeuti, Zucker et. al.

The first significant proof-theoretic results obtained for set theory are to be found in Feferman [11], where he introduces predicatively reducible subsystems of ZF. Friedman [23] is concerned with intuitionistic set theories and their importance for constructive mathematics, a track we do not follow here. In both cases the proof-theoretic analysis is carried out by reducing the set theories to subsystems of  $A_2$ . In order to do this, a lot of coding is necessary.

In this Habilitationsschrift we will present a unifying approach to the proof theory of theories in strength between Peano arithmetic PA and the theory KP<sub>i</sub> defined below. The central notion is that of admissible set; the central method is the systematic use of theories for (iterated) admissible sets.

In the beginning of the sixties, several attempts were made to develop recursion theories on more general domains than the natural numbers. In this connection we mention the metarecursion theory of Kreisel-Sacks [39], Takeuti's recursion theory on the ordinals [56,57] and Kripke's definition of  $\alpha$ -recursive functions by means of an equation

calculus [40]. Platek [42] then introduced admissible sets as natural domains for such abstract recursion theories. In doing this he also bridged the gap between recursion theory and set theory. Later the work of Barwise showed the importance of admissible sets for the logic of infinitary languages (cf. [1]). Here we will employ theories for admissible sets in proof-theoretic research.

$N$  denotes the set of natural numbers. Over the natural numbers as urelements we fix the largest possible universe of sets  $V_N$  defined by the following recursion on the ordinals:

$$\begin{aligned} V_N(0) &:= \emptyset; \\ V_N(\alpha+1) &:= \text{Pow}(N \cup V_N(\alpha)); \\ V_N(\lambda) &:= \bigcup\{V_N(\xi) : \xi < \lambda\}, \text{ if } \lambda \text{ is a limit;} \\ V_N &:= \bigcup\{V_N(\xi) : \text{Ord}(\xi)\}. \end{aligned}$$

The use of the natural numbers as urelements is theoretically superfluous, but has several technical advantages as should become clear later. Very often we will only consider the subhierarchy  $(L_\alpha : \text{Ord}(\alpha))$  of the sets constructible over the natural numbers.

Let  $L_1$  be the usual first order language of Peano arithmetic. The theories for admissible sets are formulated in the extended language  $L_* = L_1(\in, S, N)$  in which  $L_1$  is augmented by: a membership relation symbol  $\in$ ; a unary relation symbol  $S$  to express that an object is a set and not an urelement; and a set constant  $N$  for the set of the natural

numbers as urelements. A  $\Delta_0$  formula is an  $L_*$  formula in which all quantifiers are bounded, i.e. of the form  $(\forall x \in a)$  or  $(\exists x \in a)$ .

A transitive set  $d$  in  $V_N$  is called admissible above  $N$  if it contains  $N$  and satisfies the following Kripke-Platek axioms:

(Pair)  $\exists z(a \in z \wedge b \in z)$ ;

(Transitive Hull)  $\exists z(a \subset z \wedge z \text{ transitive})$ ;

( $\Delta_0$  Separation)  $\exists z(z = \{x \in a : A(x)\})$ ;

( $\Delta_0$  Collection)  $(\forall x \in a) \exists y A(x, y) \rightarrow \exists z (\forall x \in a) (\exists y \in z) A(x, y)$

for all  $\Delta_0$  formulas  $A$ . The ordinal  $\alpha$  is admissible above  $N$  if  $L_\alpha$  is admissible above  $N$ .

The situation of an admissible universe above  $N$  is described by the theory  $KPu$ , where we have Peano arithmetic as the theory for the urelements, the Kripke-Platek axioms as the only set existence axioms and the following principles of induction:

(IND<sub>N</sub>)  $A(0) \wedge (\forall x \in N)(A(x) \rightarrow A(x+1)) \rightarrow (\forall x \in N)A(x)$ ;

(IND<sub>ε</sub>)  $\forall x((\forall y \in x)A(y) \rightarrow A(x)) \rightarrow \forall x A(x)$

for arbitrary  $L_*$  formulas  $A$ .

$KPu^r$  is taken to be  $KPu$  with the schemes (IND<sub>N</sub>) and (IND<sub>ε</sub>) replaced by the axioms

(I<sub>N</sub>)  $\forall a[0 \in a \wedge (\forall x \in N)(x \in a \rightarrow x+1 \in a) \rightarrow (\forall x \in N)(x \in a)]$ ;

(I<sub>ε</sub>)  $\forall a[a \neq \emptyset \rightarrow (\exists x \in a)(\forall y \in a)(y \notin x)]$ .

$KPu^0$  is taken to be  $KPu$  with  $(IND_N)$  restricted to  $(I_N)$  and  $(IND_\infty)$  omitted completely.

In order to speak about universes which are limits of admissible sets, we replace in  $KPu$  the scheme of  $\Delta_0$  collection by the limit axiom

$(Lim) \forall x \exists y (x \in y \text{ & } y \text{ admissible})$

and call this theory  $KPl$ .  $KPi$  finally is  $KPu + (Lim)$  and formalizes recursively inaccessible universes, i.e. universes which are admissible limits of admissibles. The restricted theories  $KPl^r$ ,  $KPl^0$ ,  $KPi^r$  and  $KPi^0$  are defined according to  $KPu^r$  and  $KPu^0$ .

$KPi$  is the strongest system we will consider. It corresponds in proof-theoretic strength to the second order theory  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$  and to Feferman's theory  $T_0$  for explicit mathematics; for proofs cf. Feferman [15], Jäger [32] and Jäger-Pohlers [35].

It is well established that large parts of ordinary mathematics can be developed in (subsystems of)  $KPi$ ,  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$  and  $T_0$ . Subsystems of second order arithmetic have been preferred for this research originally (and still are), but there are strong reasons, to study theories in more flexible languages too.

In set theories it is possible to treat problems which in (subsystems of)  $\Delta_2$  cannot even be formulated. Typical examples are propositions of the form  $\forall x(x \text{ uncountable group} \rightarrow A(x))$  where sets of higher

cardinalities are involved. If we consider this statement in a set theory like KP<sub>i</sub>, we have to be aware of its relativized meaning. The existence of an uncountable group is consistent with KP<sub>i</sub> but not provable in KP<sub>i</sub>. Nevertheless it is interesting to determine the proof-theoretic strength which is required for the proof of A(x), provided that x is an uncountable group.

In the case of countable mathematics, it is not clear yet, how much one gains by working in subsystems of KP<sub>i</sub> rather than  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$ . It is reasonable to hope that proofs in subsystems of KP<sub>i</sub> sometimes are more perspicuous since coding can be avoided.

The main reason, however, for introducing theories for admissible sets is the observation that they present themselves as a very uniform and powerful proof-theoretic tool:

1. Although systems for admissible sets are relatively weak subsystems of ZF, they are strong enough to develop a fair amount of definability theory. Together with the expressive power of  $L_*$ , these results then make it easy to embed other systems into theories for admissible sets.
2. Theories for admissible sets are very close to initial segments of the constructible hierarchy. The relevant closure properties of these initial segments can be simulated in a system of ramified set theory which has been completely analyzed in Jäger [29] and Jäger-Pohlers [35].

To sum up, it can be said that theories for admissible sets are important for proof-theoretic research since they help to discover and exploit connections between proof theory and definability theory.

Let  $\text{Th}$  be an arbitrary theory. A typical proof-theoretic analysis of  $\text{Th}$  using theories for admissible sets proceeds as follows:

- (i) Find the least  $\alpha$  such that  $L_\alpha$  induces a model of  $\text{Th}$   
(e.g. if  $\text{Th} \subset L_2$ , then  $L_\alpha \cap \text{Pow}(N) \models \text{Th}$ ).
- (ii) Find a theory for admissible sets  $\text{Th}_0$  which formalizes  $L_\alpha$ .
- (iii) By restricting the induction principles in  $\text{Th}_0$ , find the weakest subtheory  $\text{Th}_1$  of  $\text{Th}_0$  such that

$$\text{Th} \vdash A \implies \text{Th}_1 \vdash A$$

for all sentences  $A$  of the theory  $\text{Th}$ .

- (iv) Embed  $\text{Th}_1$  into ramified set theory; calculate  $|\text{Th}_1|$ .
- (v) In all interesting cases we have  $|\text{Th}| = |\text{Th}_1|$ .

A variety of examples will be presented which support the thesis that this procedure gives sharp proof-theoretic bounds. Observe that the strength of a theory  $\text{Th}$  then is determined by the following two parameters:

- (a) the number of admissibles
- (b) the amount of induction

needed to interpret  $\text{Th}$  in a theory of admissible sets.

The following three case-studies are for the

specialists; missing definitions and proofs will be given later.

(a)  $L_{\Omega_\omega} \cap \text{Pow}(N)$  is the least standard model of  $\text{ATR}_0$ .  $\text{KP1}$  is a formalization of  $L_{\Omega_\omega}$  in terms of iterated admissible sets.  $\text{ATR}_0$  is contained in the subtheory  $\text{KP1}^0$  of  $\text{KP1}$ .

$$r_0 = |\text{KP1}^0| = |\text{ATR}_0|.$$

(b)  $L_{\Omega_\omega} \cap \text{Pow}(N)$  also is the least standard model of  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})$ . For the embedding, however, we need more induction.  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})$  is contained in  $\text{KP1}^r + (\text{IND}_N)$ .

$$\overline{\theta}(\Omega_\omega \cdot \epsilon_0)0 = |\text{KP1}^r + (\text{IND}_N)| = |(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})|.$$

(c)  $L_{i_0} \cap \text{Pow}(N)$  is the least standard model of  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$ .  $\text{KPi}$  is a formalization of  $L_{i_0}$ .  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$  is contained in  $\text{KPi}$  but in no subtheory obtained by restricting induction.

$$\overline{\theta}^0(\overline{\theta}^1\epsilon_{i_0+1}0)0 = |\text{KPi}| = |(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})|.$$

Since  $(\text{IND}_N)$  and  $(\text{IND}_\epsilon)$  are true in all sets  $L_\alpha$ , these sets are not suited for distinguishing between a theory  $\text{Th}$  and its restricted versions  $\text{Th}^r$  and  $\text{Th}^0$ . To extract more information from the sets  $L_\alpha$ , we will consider partial models.  $L_\alpha$  is called a  $\Pi_2$  model of the theory  $\text{Th}$  if  $L_\alpha \models A$  for every  $\Pi_2$  sentence provable in  $\text{Th}$ .

We end this introduction with a plan of our Habilitationsschrift.

Roughly speaking, one can distinguish between predicative and impredicative proof theory. We will carry out a complete proof-theoretic analysis of predicative theories for admissible sets and will establish their connections

to related systems in different languages. The approach here is very uniform and avoids special ad hoc methods. In the case of impredicative theories for admissible sets, we are interested in their exact correspondence to subsystems of  $A_2$ . Together with Buchholz-Feferman-Pohlers-Sieg [4], Pohlers [44], Jäger [31] and Jäger-Pohlers [35], this gives a clear picture of a certain amount of impredicative mathematics.

In section 0 we collect the basic syntactic notions which will be needed later. Some basic theories are introduced.

Section 1 reviews several well-known results of the definability theory of admissible sets. We put special emphasis on the real part  $RP(d)$  of an admissible set  $d$  and the companion  $A_X$  of a set  $X$  of subsets of  $N$ .

Proof theory starts in section 2, where we introduce the concepts of admissible cover  $\text{Th}^c$  and admissible extension  $\text{Th}^e$  of a theory  $\text{Th}$ . If  $\text{Th}$  is formulated in the language  $L_*$  and has intended model  $M$ , then  $\text{Th}^e$  can be regarded as formalization of the least admissible set which contains  $M$  as element. We prove, for example:

- (a)  $\text{Th}^e \vdash A^M \iff \text{Th} \vdash A$
- (b)  $\text{Th}^e + (I_N) \vdash A^M \iff \text{Th} + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash A$
- (c)  $\text{Th}^e \vdash^{<\alpha} A^M \iff \text{Th} \vdash^{<\phi\alpha 0} A$

for all sentences  $A$  of the language of  $\text{Th}$  and all  $\epsilon$ -numbers  $\alpha$ .

$\text{Th}^c$  is the corresponding notion for theories  $\text{Th}$  in  $L_1$ . Theorems 2.1 - 2.4 give a complete proof-theoretic characterization of  $\text{Th}^c$  and  $\text{Th}^e$ , which will be used in the following two sections.

In section 3 we consider the theory  $KPu$  and its restrictions. We study their connections to subsystems of  $A_2$  and calculate their proof-theoretic ordinals and minimal  $\Pi_2$  models.

Section 4 treats theories for iterated admissible sets without foundation. The strongest results of this section are:

$$(a) |\text{KPi}^0| = |\text{KP1}^0| = \Gamma_0$$

$$(b) \text{KPi}^0 \vdash \forall x(x \text{ admissible} \rightarrow A^x) \implies L_{\Gamma_0} \vDash A$$

for every  $\Pi_2$  sentence  $A$  of  $L_*$ . By proving the axiom  $\beta$ , comparability of well-orderings and the principle of arithmetic transfinite recursion in  $\text{KP1}^0$ , we can compare  $\text{KPi}^0$  and  $\text{KP1}^0$  with Friedman's  $\text{ATR}_0$  and Simpson's  $\text{ATR}_0^S$  defined in [21,22] and [52]. Another group of results of this section considers subtheories of  $\text{KPi}^0$  with finitely many universes and their relations to the iterated fixed point theories of Feferman [16].

In section 5 we use results of Simpson [51,52] to develop the theory of hyperarithmetic sets in the second order theory  $\text{ATR}_0$ . It follows that the class of all hyperarithmetic representation trees is, provably in  $\text{ATR}_0$ , a model of  $KPu^r$ .

It is the purpose of section 6 to underline the importance of  $KPi^0$  for theories of strength  $\Gamma_0$ . We start with a short description of predicative mathematics and the Feferman-Schütte characterization of predicativity by the ordinal  $\Gamma_0$ . Then we survey several theories of proof-theoretic ordinal  $\Gamma_0$  which have been introduced by Feferman, Friedman, Martin-Löf, Schütte, Simpson et al. for completely different philosophical and mathematical reasons. It is very striking, and supports the unifying power of  $KPi^0$ , to observe that each of these theories can be embedded into  $KPi^0$  in a very natural way. So far we have not found a theory of strength  $\Gamma_0$  where this is not true. Therefore we may regard  $KPi^0$  as the 'strongest' theory of proof-theoretic strength  $\Gamma_0$ .

Sections 7 and 8 turn to impredicative theories for iterated admissible sets and to subsystems of second order arithmetic with  $\Pi_1^1$  and  $\Delta_2^1$  comprehension. We concentrate on interpreting impredicative subsystems of  $KPi$  into  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$  and vice versa. As corollary we obtain that the addition of the axiom 'all sets are countable' does not increase the proof-theoretic strength of these theories.

In the appendix we use ramified set theory in order to give the detailed proofs of the main results of section 2.

Acknowledgements.

Many people contributed directly or indirectly to the completion of these lecture notes, and it is impossible to mention all of them. In the first place, however, I would like to express my deep gratitude to Profs. S. Feferman and W. Pohlers who guided my research during the last few years. I owe a lot to Profs. W. Buchholz, K. Schütte and H. Schwichtenberg for introducing me to mathematical logic and for providing an environment where my interests could grow. Numerous discussions with them have been both stimulating and educational. I also wish to thank Prof. S.G. Simpson with whom I had many conversations on the recursion-theoretic aspects of theories for admissible sets.

This work was partially supported by a research project of the DFG (Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft).

## §0. PRELIMINARIES.

The essential purpose of this section is to present the languages and proof systems of first order arithmetic, second order arithmetic and set theory with urelements. Apart from that, we introduce some basic axioms and describe principles of induction on the natural numbers and  $\epsilon$ -induction. All the notions we use are more or less standard; for first and second order arithmetic see any textbook on mathematical logic (e.g. Shoenfield [48]), for set theory with urelements refer to Barwise [1].

We disregard standard conventions in some insignificant cases only. Formulas are built up from atomic formulas and negated atomic formulas; the negation of an arbitrary formula is defined in the obvious way via De Morgan's laws and the law of double negation. In the setup of the proof systems we follow Tait [54,55] instead of using the more familiar Hilbert or Gentzen calculus. These modifications have some technical advantages but are not essential.

### 0.1. The languages $L_1$ , $L_2$ and $L_*$ .

The vocabulary of  $L_1$  consists of constants  $0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$  for all natural numbers, countably many number variables  $u, v, w, x, y, z, \dots$ , a 1-ary relation symbol  $R$ , two 2-ary relation symbols  $\text{Eq}$ ,  $\text{Sc}$  and two 3-ary relation symbols  $\text{Pl}$ ,  $\text{Ti}$ . Here  $\text{Eq}$  stands for the primitive recursive equality relation, and

Sc, Pl, Ti stand for the graphs of the primitive recursive successor, plus and times function, respectively.  $L_1$  terms are the number constants and (free) number variables; we denote them by i,j,k,l,m,n.

The atomic formulas are all those of the form  $J(k_1, \dots, k_n)$  where J is an n-ary relation symbol. Instead of  $\text{Eq}(m,n)$  we write  $m =_N n$ . The formulas A of  $L_1$  and their negations  $\neg A$  are defined inductively as follows.

Inductive definition of the  $L_1$  formulas.

1. If A is an atomic formula, then A and  $\neg A$  are  $L_1$  formulas of length 0.
2. If A and B are  $L_1$  formulas of lengths m and n, then  $(A \& B)$  and  $(A \vee B)$  are  $L_1$  formulas of length  $\max(m,n)+1$ .
3. If  $A(u)$  is an  $L_1$  formula of length n, then  $\forall x A(x)$  and  $\exists x A(x)$  are  $L_1$  formulas of length  $n+1$ .

Inductive definition of the negation  $\neg A$  of an  $L_1$  formula A.

1.  $\neg \neg A := A$ , if A is an atomic formula.
2.  $\neg(A \& B) := (\neg A \vee \neg B)$ ;  $\neg(A \vee B) := (\neg A \& \neg B)$ .
3.  $\neg \forall x A(x) := \exists x \neg A(x)$ ;  $\neg \exists x A(x) := \forall x \neg A(x)$ .

If we denote the length of a formula A by  $|A|$ , then we have  $|A| = |\neg A|$ .

Definition of TRUE. By TRUE we denote the collection of all atomic formulas and negated atomic formulas which are true under their intended interpretation. That is, we have for all number constants m,n,k:

( $\gamma$ ) Eq(m,n)	belongs to TRUE if	n is (not) equal to m;
( $\gamma$ ) Sc(m,n)		n is (not) equal to m+1;
( $\gamma$ ) Pl(m,n,k)		k is (not) equal to m+n;
( $\gamma$ ) Til(m,n,k)		k is (not) equal to m.n.

The second order language  $L_2$  is an extension of  $L_1$  obtained by adjoining countably many set variables U,V,W,X, Y,Z,... and the membership relation symbol  $\in$ . The atomic formulas of  $L_2$  are the atomic formulas of  $L_1$  and all ( $k \in X$ ) for arbitrary k and X.

The  $L_2$  formulas form the smallest collection containing all atomic formulas and negated atomic formulas of  $L_2$  closed under  $\&$ ,  $\vee$ , numerical quantification  $\forall x$ ,  $\exists x$  and the following set quantification: If A(U) is an  $L_2$  formula, then so are  $\forall X A(X)$  and  $\exists X A(X)$ , where the length is increased by 1. The negation  $\neg A$  of an  $L_2$  formula A is defined as the negation of an  $L_1$  formula with the additional  $\neg \forall X A(X) := \exists X \neg A(X)$  and  $\neg \exists X A(X) := \forall X \neg A(X)$ .

A formula A of  $L_2$  is called arithmetic or  $\Pi^1_n$ , if no set quantifiers occur in it; A may contain free set variables. Now suppose that A is an  $L_2$  formula of the form  $Q_1 x_1 \dots Q_n x_n B(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ , where  $B(u_1, \dots, u_n)$  is arithmetic and  $Q_1 \dots Q_n$  is an alternating sequence of quantifiers,  $n \geq 1$ . If  $Q_1$  is existential (universal), then A is said to be a  $\Sigma^1_n$  ( $\Pi^1_n$ ) formula. Obviously A is  $\Sigma^1_n$  iff  $\neg A$  is  $\Pi^1_n$ .

All of the set theories which we will consider comprise two different kinds of objects: urelements and sets. They are formulated in the extended language  $L_*$  in which  $L_1$  is augmented by: a membership relation symbol  $\in$ , a unary relation symbol  $S$ , used to express that an object is a set, and a set constant  $N$  for the set of the natural numbers. If an object is not a set, we call it an urelement. By the ontological axioms we will determine later that the urelements are precisely the natural numbers. The terms of  $L_*$  are the number constants, the constant  $N$  and the free variables; they are denoted by  $a, b, c, d, \dots$ . Since  $L_*$  is not so familiar, we list the basic definitions.

Inductive definition of the  $\Delta_0$  formulas of  $L_*$ .

1. If  $J$  is an  $n$ -ary relation symbol of  $L_*$ , then  $J(a_1, \dots, a_n)$  and  $\neg J(a_1, \dots, a_n)$  are  $\Delta_0$  formulas of length 0.
2. If  $A$  and  $B$  are  $\Delta_0$  formulas of lengths  $m$  and  $n$ , then  $(A \& B)$  and  $(A \vee B)$  are  $\Delta_0$  formulas of length  $\max(m, n) + 1$ .
3. If  $A(u)$  is a  $\Delta_0$  formula of length  $n$ , then  $(\forall x \in a)A(x)$  and  $(\exists x \in a)A(x)$  are  $\Delta_0$  formulas of length  $n+2$ .

Inductive definition of the  $L_*$  formulas.

1. Each  $\Delta_0$  formula of length  $n$  is an  $L_*$  formula of length  $n$ .
2. If  $A$  and  $B$  are  $L_*$  formulas of length  $m$  and  $n$ , then  $(A \& B)$  and  $(A \vee B)$  are  $L_*$  formulas of length  $\max(m, n) + 1$ .
3. If  $A(u)$  is an  $L_*$  formula of length  $n$ , then  $\forall x A(x)$  and  $\exists x A(x)$  are  $L_*$  formulas of length  $n+1$  and  $(\forall x \in a)A(x)$  and  $(\exists x \in a)A(x)$  are  $L_*$  formulas of length  $n+2$ .

Inductive definition of the  $\Sigma$  and  $\Pi$  formulas of  $L_*$ .

1. Each  $\Delta_0$  formula is a  $\Sigma$  and  $\Pi$  formula.
2. If  $A$  and  $B$  are  $\Sigma$  ( $\Pi$ ) formulas, then  $(A \& B)$  and  $(A \vee B)$  are  $\Sigma$  ( $\Pi$ ) formulas.
3. If  $A(u)$  is a  $\Sigma$  ( $\Pi$ ) formula, then  $(\forall x \in a)A(x)$  and  $(\exists x \in a)A(x)$  are  $\Sigma$  ( $\Pi$ ) formulas.
4. If  $A(u)$  is a  $\Sigma$  formula, then  $\exists x A(x)$  is a  $\Sigma$  formula.
5. If  $A(u)$  is a  $\Pi$  formula, then  $\forall x A(x)$  is a  $\Pi$  formula.

Definition of the  $\Sigma_n$  and  $\Pi_n$  formulas of  $L_*$ ,  $n \geq 1$ .

If  $A(u_1, \dots, u_n)$  is a  $\Delta_0$  formula, then  $\exists x_1 \forall x_2 \dots Q_n x_n A(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  is a  $\Sigma_n$  formula and  $\forall x_1 \exists x_2 \dots Q_n x_n A(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  a  $\Pi_n$  formula.

The negation  $\neg A$  of an  $L_*$  formula  $A$  is defined as the negation of an  $L_1$  formula with the extra clauses:  $\neg(\forall x \in a)A(x) := (\exists x \in a)\neg A(x)$  and  $\neg(\exists x \in a)A(x) := (\forall x \in a)\neg A(x)$ . Then we have:  $A$  is  $\Delta_0$  iff  $\neg A$  is  $\Delta_0$ ;  $A$  is  $\Sigma$  iff  $\neg A$  is  $\Pi$ ;  $A$  is  $\Sigma_n$  iff  $\neg A$  is  $\Pi_n$ . If  $A$  is an  $L_*$  formula, then  $A^\delta$  is the result of replacing each unrestricted quantifier  $\forall x(\dots)$  and  $\exists x(\dots)$  in  $A$  by  $(\forall x \in a)(\dots)$  and  $(\exists x \in a)(\dots)$ , respectively. To increase readability, we sometimes drop or insert brackets.

Definition.

1.  $a \subset b : \Leftrightarrow (\forall x \in a)(x \in b)$ .
2.  $a = b : \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} (\neg S(a) \& \neg S(b) \& a =_N b) \vee \\ (S(a) \& S(b) \& a \subset b \& b \subset a) . \end{cases}$
3.  $\text{Tran}(a) : \Leftrightarrow (\forall x \in a)(\forall y \in x)(y \in a)$ .

$$4. \ a = \{x \in b : A(x)\} : \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} S(a) \ \& \ (\forall x \in a)(x \in b \ \& \ A(x)) \ \& \\ & (\forall x \in b)(\neg A(x) \vee x \in a). \end{cases}$$

In each language  $L_1$ ,  $L_2$  and  $L_*$  we use some standard abbreviations. So  $A + B$  and  $A \leftrightarrow B$  stand for  $\neg A \vee B$  and  $(A + B) \ \& \ (B + A)$ , respectively. Underlined letters denote finite sequences of terms or variables; e.g.  $\underline{a} = a_1, \dots, a_n$ ,  $\underline{k} = k_1, \dots, k_n$ ,  $\underline{U} = U_1, \dots, U_n$ .

Convention. The notation  $A[\underline{u}]$  ( $A[\underline{U}, \underline{v}]$ ) is used to indicate that all free variables of  $A$  come from the list  $\underline{u}$  ( $\underline{U}, \underline{v}$ );  $A(\underline{u})$  ( $A(\underline{U}, \underline{v})$ ) may contain other free variables besides  $\underline{u}$  ( $\underline{U}, \underline{v}$ ).

A sentence is a formula without free variables. A formula  $A$  is called R-positive, if all appearances of  $R$  in  $A$  are positive, i.e.  $A$  contains no subformula  $\neg R(a)$ . We often write  $A(R^+)$  for an R-positive formula  $A$ .

#### 0.2. The proof systems $Z_1$ , $Z_2$ and $Z_*$ .

For each language  $L_1$ ,  $L_2$  and  $L_*$  we define Tait-style proof systems  $Z_1$ ,  $Z_2$  and  $Z_*$  (cf. [54,55]). The rules of inference are formulated for finite sets of formulas  $\Gamma$ ,  $\Lambda$ ,  $\Gamma_1, \Lambda_1, \dots$ , which should be interpreted disjunctively. We write (for example)  $\Gamma, \Lambda, A, B$  for the union of  $\Gamma$ ,  $\Lambda$  and  $\{A, B\}$ .

Basic rules of Z<sub>1</sub>, Z<sub>2</sub> and Z<sub>\*</sub>.

(B)  $\Gamma, \neg A, A$  , if A is atomic;

(T)  $\Gamma, A$  , if A is in TRUE.

Normal rules of Z<sub>1</sub>.

$$(\&) \frac{\Gamma, A_0 \quad \Gamma, A_1}{\Gamma, A_0 \& A_1}$$

$$(v) \frac{\Gamma, A_i \text{ for } i = 0 \text{ or } i = 1}{\Gamma, A_0 \vee A_1}$$

$$(\forall x) \frac{\Gamma, A(u)}{\Gamma, \forall x A(x)}$$

$$(\exists x) \frac{\Gamma, A(k)}{\Gamma, \exists x A(x)}$$

where in  $(\forall x)$  the free variable u is not to occur in the conclusion.

Normal rules of Z<sub>2</sub>.

(&), (v), ( $\forall x$ ), ( $\exists x$ ) as before;

$$(\forall x) \frac{\Gamma, A(U)}{\Gamma, \forall x A(X)}$$

$$(\exists x) \frac{\Gamma, A(U)}{\Gamma, \exists x A(X)}$$

where in  $(\forall x)$  the free variable U is not to occur in the conclusion.

Normal rules of Z<sub>\*</sub>.

(&), (v) as before;

$$(b\forall) \frac{\Gamma, u \in a + A(u)}{\Gamma, (\forall x \in a)A(x)}$$

$$(b\exists) \frac{\Gamma, b \in a \& A(b)}{\Gamma, (\exists x \in a)A(x)}$$

$$(\forall) \frac{\Gamma, A(u)}{\Gamma, \forall x A(x)}$$

$$(\exists) \frac{\Gamma, A(b)}{\Gamma, \exists x A(x)}$$

where in  $(b\forall)$  and  $(\forall)$  the free variable  $u$  is not to occur in the conclusion.

#### Cut rule of $Z_1$ , $Z_2$ and $Z_*$ .

$$(cut) \frac{\Gamma, A \quad \Gamma, \neg A}{\Gamma} \quad \text{The degree of this cut is the length } |A| = |\neg A| \text{ of its cut formulas.}$$

Let  $L$  be one of the languages  $L_1$ ,  $L_2$  or  $L_*$ ,  $\Gamma$  a finite set of  $L$  formulas and  $Z$  the corresponding proof system. Derivability of  $\Gamma$  in  $Z$ ,  $Z \vdash \Gamma$ , is defined inductively.

#### Inductive definition of $Z \vdash_m^n \Gamma$ .

1. If  $\Gamma$  is a basic rule of  $Z$ , then  $Z \vdash_m^n \Gamma$  for all natural numbers  $m$  and  $n$ .

2. If  $Z \vdash_m^{n_i} \Gamma_i$  and  $n_i < n$  for every premise  $\Gamma_i$  of a normal rule or a cut of degree  $< m$ , then we have  $Z \vdash_m^n \Gamma$  for the conclusion  $\Gamma$  of that inference.

$Z \vdash \Gamma$  ( $Z \vdash_0 \Gamma$ ) means  $Z \vdash_m^n \Gamma$  ( $Z \vdash_0^n \Gamma$ ) for some  $m$  and  $n$  (some  $n$ ). If  $Z \vdash_0 \Gamma$ , then this derivation is called cut-free since it does not use the cut rule. Cut elimination for the proof systems  $Z$  is the usual cut elimination for propositional logic; cf. e.g. [54].

Theorem 0.1 (Cut elimination).

(a)  $Z \vdash_{m+1}^n \Gamma \implies Z \vdash_m^{2^n} \Gamma$  ;

(b)  $Z \vdash \Gamma \implies Z \vdash_0 \Gamma$ .

A theory  $\text{Th}$  in  $L$  is specified by a set  $\text{Ax}(\text{Th})$  of  $L$  formulas, the axioms of  $\text{Th}$ .

$$\text{Th} \vdash_m^n \Gamma$$

means that there exists a finite set  $\{\neg A_1, \dots, \neg A_k\}$  of universal closures of axioms of  $\text{Th}$  such that

$$Z \vdash_m^n \{\neg A_1, \dots, \neg A_k\}, \Gamma.$$

$\text{Th} \vdash \Gamma$  is defined analogously. Put in other terms (if  $L$  is  $L_1$  or  $L_*$ ), a finite set  $\Lambda$  of  $L$  formulas is called a Th-axiom set, if each element of  $\Lambda$  is the negation of a Th axiom or has the form  $\exists x_1 \dots \exists x_k \neg A[\underline{u}, x_1, \dots, x_n]$ , where  $A[\underline{u}, v_1, \dots, v_k]$  is an axiom of  $\text{Th}$ . Then  $\text{Th} \vdash \Gamma$  if  $Z \vdash \Lambda, \Gamma$  for some Th-axiom set  $\Lambda$ .

In general we will work rather informally in a given theory. If we write 'Lemma n.k (Th)' or 'Theorem n.k (Th)', this means that the statement of Lemma n.k or Theorem n.k is provable in the theory  $\text{Th}$ .

Let  $\text{Th}_1$  and  $\text{Th}_2$  be theories in  $L$ . We write  $\text{Th}_1 \subset \text{Th}_2$  if every theorem of  $\text{Th}_1$  is a theorem of  $\text{Th}_2$ . We write  $\text{Th}_1 \equiv \text{Th}_2$  if  $\text{Th}_1 \subset \text{Th}_2$  and  $\text{Th}_2 \subset \text{Th}_1$ . If  $C$  is a class of  $L$  formulas, then  $\text{Th} + C$  is the extension of  $\text{Th}$  with the formulas in  $C$  as additional axioms.

### 0.3. The theories PA, EA and ES.

The axioms of Peano arithmetic PA are the axioms for the successor function, the recursive definitions of plus and times, the equality axioms and the scheme of complete induction on the natural numbers.

#### 1. Successor.

$\neg Sc(k, 0)$  ;  
 $k \neq_N 0 \rightarrow \exists x Sc(x, k)$  ;  
 $\exists x Sc(k, x)$  ;  
 $Sc(n, n+1)$  for every number constant  $n$ ;  
 $Sc(k, i) \& Sc(k, j) \rightarrow i =_N j$  ;  
 $Sc(i, k) \& Sc(j, k) \rightarrow i =_N j$  .

#### 2. Plus.

$P1(k, m, i) \& P1(k, m, j) \rightarrow i =_N j$  ;  
 $\exists x P1(k, m, x)$  ;  
 $P1(k, 0, k)$  ;  
 $P1(k, m, n) \& Sc(m, i) \& Sc(n, j) \rightarrow P1(k, i, j)$  .

#### 3. Times.

$Ti(k, m, i) \& Ti(k, m, j) \rightarrow i =_N j$  ;  
 $\exists x Ti(k, m, x)$  ;  
 $Ti(k, 0, 0)$  ;  
 $Ti(k, m, n) \& Sc(m, i) \& P1(n, k, j) \rightarrow Ti(k, i, j)$  .

#### 4. Equality.

$k =_N k$  ;  
 $k =_N m \rightarrow (A(k) \rightarrow A(m))$  for all atomic formulas.

5. Complete induction.

$(IND_N) A(0) \& \forall x \forall y (A(x) \& Sc(x,y) \rightarrow A(y)) \rightarrow \forall x A(x)$

for arbitrary formulas.

Elementary analysis EA is one of our two basic systems of second order arithmetic. In addition to the axioms of PA with the schemes of equality and complete induction formulated for  $L_2$  formulas, it contains the axiom scheme  $(\Pi_0^1\text{-CA})$  of arithmetic comprehension

$(\Pi_0^1\text{-CA}) \exists X \forall x (x \in X \leftrightarrow A(x))$

for any arithmetic formula  $A(u)$ .  $EA_0$  is the subsystem of EA where the scheme of complete induction  $(IND_N)$  is replaced by the induction axiom

$(I_N) \forall X [0 \in X \& \forall x \forall y (x \in X \& Sc(x,y) \rightarrow y \in X) \rightarrow \forall x (x \in X)]$ .

If  $C$  is a collection of  $L_2$  formulas, we write  $C(C_0)$  for the theory  $EA + C$  ( $EA_0 + C$ ). To obtain an increasing sequence of second order theories we may consider the following schemes of  $\Pi_n^1$  and  $\Delta_n^1$  comprehension

$(\Pi_n^1\text{-CA}) \exists X \forall x (x \in X \leftrightarrow A(x))$

$(\Delta_n^1\text{-CA}) \forall x (A(x) \leftrightarrow B(x)) \rightarrow \exists X \forall x (x \in X \leftrightarrow A(x))$

for all  $\Pi_n^1$  formulas  $A(u)$  and  $\Sigma_n^1$  formulas  $B(v)$ . Then we have:

$(\Pi_0^1\text{-CA}) \subset (\Delta_1^1\text{-CA}) \subset (\Pi_1^1\text{-CA}) \subset (\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) \subset \dots$

Finally, full classical analysis  $A_2$  is EA plus unlimited comprehension

(CA)  $\exists X \forall x(x \in X \leftrightarrow A(x))$

for arbitrary  $L_2$  formulas  $A(u)$ . In the presence of (CA), the axiom of induction ( $I_N$ ) is equivalent to the scheme ( $IND_N$ ).

We now present three versions of elementary set theory: ES,  $ES^r$  and  $ES^0$ . These theories have the same set existence axioms but differ in the assumptions they make about foundation and complete induction on the natural numbers. ES,  $ES^r$  and  $ES^0$  are formulated in  $L_*$ , the axioms of ES are divided into the following five groups.

1. Ontological axioms. These axioms can be considered as implicit definitions of the predicate S and the set constant N:

$S(a) \leftrightarrow a \notin N$  ;

$a \in b \rightarrow S(b)$  ;

$J(\underline{a}) \rightarrow \underline{a} \in N$  for every relation symbol J of  $L_1$ .

2. Number-theoretic axioms. For every axiom  $A[\underline{u}]$  of PA:

$\underline{a} \in N \rightarrow A^N[\underline{a}]$ .

3. Equality axioms.

$a = a$  ;

$a = b \rightarrow (A(a) \rightarrow A(b))$  for every atomic formula of  $L_*$ .

4. Set existence axioms.

(Pair)  $\exists z(a \in z \wedge b \in z)$  ;

(Transitive Hull)  $\exists z(a \subset z \wedge \text{Tran}(z))$  ;

( $\Delta_0$ -Sep)  $\exists z(z = \{x \in a : A(x)\})$  for all  $\Delta_0$  formulas  $A(u)$ .

This scheme is called  $\Delta_0$  separation.

5. Axioms of induction. These axioms provide complete induction on the natural numbers ( $\text{IND}_N$ ) and the usual  $\epsilon$ -induction ( $\text{IND}_\epsilon$ ); both for arbitrary  $L_*$  formulas:

( $\text{IND}_N$ )  $A(0) \wedge (\forall x, y \in N)(A(x) \wedge S_C(x, y) \rightarrow A(y)) \rightarrow (\forall x \in N)A(x)$  .

( $\text{IND}_\epsilon$ )  $\forall x((\forall y \in x)A(y) \wedge A(x)) \rightarrow \forall xA(x)$  .

$\text{ES}^r$  is taken to be the theory ES with ( $\text{IND}_N$ ) and ( $\text{IND}_\epsilon$ ) replaced by the axioms ( $I_N$ ) and ( $I_\epsilon$ ):

( $I_N$ )  $0 \in a \wedge (\forall x, y \in N)(x \in a \wedge S_C(x, y) \rightarrow y \in a) \rightarrow (\forall x \in N)(x \in a)$  ;

( $I_\epsilon$ )  $(\exists x \in a)(0 = x) \rightarrow (\exists x \in a)(\forall y \in a)(y \notin x)$  .

$\text{ES}^\sigma$  is taken to be ES with ( $\text{IND}_N$ ) restricted to ( $I_N$ ) and ( $\text{IND}_\epsilon$ ) omitted completely.

In general, if  $C$  is a class of  $L_*$  formulas, then ( $C\text{-IND}_N$ ) and ( $C\text{-IND}_\epsilon$ ) denote the schemes ( $\text{IND}_N$ ) and ( $\text{IND}_\epsilon$ ) restricted to the formulas in  $C$ . Over  $\text{ES}^\sigma$ , ( $I_N$ ) and ( $I_\epsilon$ ) are equivalent to ( $\Delta_0\text{-IND}_N$ ) and ( $\Delta_0\text{-IND}_\epsilon$ ).

The significance of the  $\Sigma$  formulas comes from the principle of  $\Sigma$  persistency. It is logically valid; here we state it for  $ES^0$ .

$\Sigma$  persistency. For every  $\Sigma$  formula  $A$  we have

$$ES^0 \vdash a \in b \ \& \ A^a \rightarrow (A^b \ \& \ A).$$

#### 0.4. Embedding of $L_2$ into $L_*$ .

With each  $L_2$  formula  $A[\underline{u}, \underline{v}]$  we associate an  $L_*$  formula  $A^*[\underline{u}, \underline{v}]$  defined by

$$\underline{v} \in N \ \& \ \underline{u} \in Pow(N) \rightarrow A'[\underline{u}, \underline{v}].$$

$\underline{u} \in Pow(N)$  is an abbreviation of the  $L_*$  formula  $S(u) \ \& \ u \subset N$  and  $A'$  results from  $A$  by replacing all numerical quantifiers  $\forall x(\dots), \exists x(\dots)$  in  $A$  by  $(\forall x \in N)(\dots), (\exists x \in N)(\dots)$  and all set quantifiers  $\forall Y(\dots), \exists Y(\dots)$  in  $A$  by  $\forall y(y \in Pow(N) \rightarrow \dots), \exists y(y \in Pow(N) \ \& \ \dots)$ .

In this sense  $L_2$  can be considered as a sublanguage of  $L_*$ . When working in the context of set theories, we often identify the  $L_2$  formula  $A[\underline{u}, \underline{v}]$  and its translation  $A^*[\underline{u}, \underline{v}]$ . Clearly we have for every  $L_2$  formula  $A$ :

$$EA_0 \vdash A \implies ES^0 \vdash A;$$

$$EA \vdash A \implies ES^0 + (IND_N) \vdash A.$$

### 0.5. Extensions of $L_2$ and $L_*$ .

For the actual work in  $L_2$  and  $L_*$ , it is often very convenient to use formulations with function symbols for primitive recursive functions (at least). So assume that  $L$  is  $L_2$  or  $L_*$  and  $\text{Th}$  a theory in  $L$ . The language  $L(\text{PR})$  results from  $L$  by adding a function constant for every primitive recursive function and extending the syntax accordingly.  $\text{Th}(\text{PR})$  is  $\text{Th}$  formulated in  $L(\text{PR})$  plus the defining equations for the primitive recursive functions. The following remark is then obvious.

Remark. Let  $\text{Th}$  be a theory in  $L$ ,  $\text{EA}_0 \subset \text{Th}$ . For every formula  $A$  of  $L(\text{PR})$  there exists a formula  $B$  of  $L$  with the same free variables such that:

- (i)  $\text{EA}_0(\text{PR}) \vdash A \leftrightarrow B$ .
- (ii) If  $A$  is a  $\Pi_n^1 (\Sigma_n^1, \Delta_0, \Pi, \Sigma)$  formula of  $L(\text{PR})$ , then  $B$  is a  $\Pi_n^1 (\Sigma_n^1, \Delta_0, \Pi, \Sigma)$  formula of  $L$ .
- (iii)  $\text{Th}(\text{PR}) \vdash A \iff \text{Th} \vdash B$ .

Therefore we can identify  $\text{Th}(\text{PR})$  and  $\text{Th}$  in all relevant cases.

If  $\text{Th}$  is a set theory in  $L_*$ , we have to consider the following definitional extension as well. Suppose that  $A$  describes in  $\text{Th}$  a set-theoretic function on the universe,

$$\text{Th} \vdash \forall x \exists ! y A[\underline{x}, \underline{y}] .$$

We then adjoin a new function symbol  $F_A$  and the axiom

$$(F_A) \quad \forall x \forall y (F_A(\underline{x}) = y \leftrightarrow A[\underline{x}, y]).$$

A function symbol  $F_A$  is called a  $\Sigma$  function symbol if its definition clause A is a  $\Sigma$  formula.

A formula  $B(F_A(\underline{a}))$  is considered as an abbreviation for  $\exists x(A[\underline{a}, x] \& B(x))$ . One has to be careful, however, since the  $\Delta_0$  formulas are not closed under quantification restricted by one of these function symbols. If  $B(u)$  is  $\Delta_0$ , then  $(\exists x \in F_A(\underline{a}))B(x)$  stands for  $\exists y(A[\underline{a}, y] \& (\exists x \in y)B(x))$  and is in general not a  $\Delta_0$  formula.

Convention. Strictly speaking we use  $=_N$  and  $<_N$  as relation symbols for the primitive recursive equality and less relation on the natural numbers. In  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ , however, we often drop the subscript N and write = and < instead of  $=_N$  and  $<_N$ , respectively.

## §1. ADMISSIBLE SETS.

In this section we turn to the central object of our interest, admissible sets. The following reviews some of their definability theory and serves as motivation for the proof-theoretic work in the subsequent sections. The reader who is interested in a detailed exposition of the set-theoretic, model-theoretic or recursion theoretic aspects of admissible sets and structures may consult Barwise's monograph [1]. Here we confine ourselves to relevant notions and consequences.

### 1.1. Structures for $L_1$ , $L_2$ and $L_*$ .

A structure for  $L_1$  is an ordered 6-tuple

$$M = (|M|, \text{Eq}^M, \text{Sc}^M, \text{Pl}^M, \text{Ti}^M, \text{R}^M)$$

with

- (i)  $|M|$  is a set which contains the natural numbers;
- (ii)  $\text{Eq}^M$  and  $\text{Sc}^M$  are 2-ary relations on  $|M|$ ;
- (iii)  $\text{Pl}^M$  and  $\text{Ti}^M$  are 3-ary relations on  $|M|$ ;
- (iv)  $\text{R}^M$  is a 1-ary relation on  $|M|$ .

In the  $L_1$  structure  $M$ ,  $|M|$  is the range of the number variables;  $\text{Eq}^M$ ,  $\text{Sc}^M$ ,  $\text{Pl}^M$ ,  $\text{Ti}^M$  and  $\text{R}^M$  are interpretations of the relation symbols Eq, Sc, Pl, Ti and R, respectively.

A structure for  $L_2$  is a pair  $(M; S)$  where

- (i)  $M$  is a structure for  $L_1$ ;
- (ii)  $S$  is a non-empty collection of subsets of  $|M|$ ;
- (iii)  $|M| \cap S = \emptyset$ .

A structure for  $L_*$  is a triple  $(M; a, E)$  where

- (i)  $M$  is a structure for  $L_1$ ;
- (ii)  $a$  is a set such that  $|M| \in a$ ;
- (iii)  $E \subset a \times (a - |M|)$ .

In the  $L_2$  structure  $(M; S)$ ,  $S$  is the range of the set variables of  $L_2$ . In the  $L_*$  structure  $(M; a, E)$ ,  $a$  is the range of the variables of  $L_*$ ,  $|M|$  is the interpretation of the set constant  $N$ ,  $a - |M|$  is the interpretation of the relation symbol  $S$  and  $E$  is the interpretation of the membership relation  $\in$ .

If  $L$  is one of the languages  $L_1$ ,  $L_2$  or  $L_*$  and  $K$  is an  $L$  structure, then the notion of truth in  $K$ ,  $K \models A$  for  $L$  formulas  $A$ , is defined as usual; cf. e.g. Shoenfield [48].  $K$  is called a model of the formal system  $\text{Th}$  if each theorem of  $\text{Th}$  is true in  $K$ . Observe that the ontological axioms are true in all  $L_*$  structures.

### 1.2. Standard structures.

Fortunately, we do not have to consider arbitrary structures but can concentrate on so called standard structures.

A standard structure for  $L_1$  is a 6-tuple

$$(N, Q) = (N, \text{Eq}^N, \text{Sc}^N, \text{Pl}^N, \text{Ti}^N, Q)$$

where  $N$  is the set of natural numbers,  $\text{Eq}^N = \{(x, x) : x \in N\}$

$\text{Sc}^N = \{(x, x+1) : x \in N\}$ ,  $\text{Pl}^N = \{(x, y, x+y) : x, y \in N\}$ ,  $\text{Ti}^N = \{(x, y, x+y) : x, y \in N\}$  and  $Q$  is a subset of  $N$  that interprets  $R$ .

The standard structures for  $L_2$  are all structures of the form  $(N, Q; S)$  where  $S$  is a collection of subsets of  $N$  with  $Q \in S$ . Very often we identify  $(N, \emptyset; S)$  with  $S$  and speak of the  $L_2$  structure  $S$ .

Before saying more about  $L_*$  structures, we fix the largest possible universe of sets over the urelement structure  $N$  once and for all. We write  $\text{Ord}(a)$  if  $a$  is an ordinal and use small Greek letters to denote ordinals; the class of all ordinals is called  $\text{ON}$ . By recursion on  $\text{ON}$  we define:

$$V_N(0) := \emptyset;$$

$$V_N(\alpha+1) := \text{Pow}(N \cup V_N(\alpha));$$

$$V_N(\lambda) := \bigcup \{V_N(\xi) : \xi < \lambda\}, \text{ if } \lambda \text{ is a limit;}$$

$$V_N := \bigcup \{V_N(\xi) : \text{Ord}(\xi)\}$$

where  $\text{Pow}(a)$  is the power set of  $a$ . By letting  $V_N(0) = \emptyset$  rather than  $V_N(0) = N$ , we achieve that  $V_N$  does not contain natural numbers.  $V_N$  is the collection of all sets over the natural numbers as urelements. The standard structure  $N$ , the universe of sets  $V_N$  and the membership relation  $\in$  on  $(N \cup V_N) \times V_N$  constitute our set-theoretic world.

Standard structures for  $L_*$  are 4-tuples  $(N, Q; a, \in)$  where  $a$  is a transitive set in  $V_N$  which contains  $N$  and  $Q \subset N$  as

elements. If  $a$  is such a set, we often write  $(Q;a)$  for the structure  $(N,Q;a,\in)$  and  $a$  for  $(\emptyset;a)$ ; it is always clear from the context whether we mean the set or the structure.

Definition. The ordinal of  $a$ , denoted by  $\text{o}(a)$ , is the least ordinal not in  $a$ . We define for  $a \in V_N$ :

$$\text{o}(a) := \min\{\xi : \xi \notin a\}.$$

### 1.3. Constructible sets.

Most important for us are standard structures which are determined by initial segments of the constructible hierarchy à la Gödel (cf. [1,48]). Suppose that  $a$  is an element of  $V_N$ .  $L_\alpha(a)$ , the collection of sets constructible from  $a$  in  $\alpha$  steps, is generated from  $a$  by iterating the operation  $b \rightarrow \text{Def}(b)$   $\alpha$  times;

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Def}(b) := \{x \subset b : x \text{ is definable over } (N, \emptyset; b, \in) \text{ by} \\ \text{some } L_* \text{ formula with parameters from } b\}. \end{aligned}$$

Let  $\text{TC}(a)$  be the transitive closure of  $a$ , i.e. the smallest transitive set  $x \supset a$ , and define:

$$L_0(a) := N \cup \{N, a\} \cup \text{TC}(a);$$

$$L_{\alpha+1}(a) := \text{Def}(L_\alpha(a));$$

$$L_\lambda(a) := \bigcup\{L_\xi(a) : \xi < \lambda\}, \text{ if } \lambda \text{ is limit};$$

$$L(a) := \bigcup\{L_\xi(a) : \text{Ord}(\xi)\}.$$

$N$  and  $a$  are elements of  $L_\alpha(a)$ ; the ordinals of  $L_\alpha(a)$  are at

least the ordinals less than  $\alpha$ ;  $L_\alpha(a)$  is a transitive set in  $V_N$ . We write  $L_\alpha$  and  $L$  for  $L_\alpha(\emptyset)$  and  $L(\emptyset)$ , respectively.

Caution. Our definition of  $L_\alpha(a)$  slightly departs from the usual definition of the constructible hierarchy since we construct sets over the ground structure  $N$ ; each set  $L_\alpha(a)$  is infinite for example.

#### 1.4. Admissible sets.

The most important notion of this Habilitationsschrift is the notion of admissible set or, more precisely, admissible set above the natural numbers as urelements. Arbitrary admissible sets with or without urelements are treated for example in Barwise [1]; here we can concentrate on those admissibles which are characterized as the standard models of the theory KP $\mu$ .

Definition. KP $\mu$  is the theory ES plus the scheme of

$\Delta_0$  collection

$$(\Delta_0\text{-Col}) \quad (\forall x \in a) \exists y A(x, y) \rightarrow \exists z (\forall x \in a) (\exists y \in z) A(x, y)$$

for all  $\Delta_0$  formulas A.

#### Definition.

- (a) A set  $a \in V_N$  is called an admissible set above  $N$  if  $a$  is transitive and  $a \models \text{KP}\mu$ .
- (b) An ordinal  $\alpha$  is called admissible above  $N$  if  $L_\alpha$  is an admissible set above  $N$ .

Remark and convention. In the last definition we used the phrase 'above  $N$ ' in order to emphasize the importance of the ground structure  $N$ . Since  $N$  is an element of  $L_\omega$ , we can easily see that  $L_\omega$  is not a model of  $\Delta_0$  collection, and so  $\omega$  is not an admissible ordinal above  $N$ . The admissible ordinals as defined in the literature (cf. e.g. [1]) are exactly the admissible ordinals above  $N$  and the ordinal  $\omega$ . We will use 'admissible' to mean 'admissible above  $N$ '. There is no great harm in doing this since each admissible set above  $N$  is admissible in the usual sense.

Before we give some examples of admissible sets, we need a definition. A set  $a$  is called hereditarily countable if there exists a 1-1 function  $f$  with domain  $TC(a)$  and range a subset of  $N$ , i.e.  $f : TC(a) \xrightarrow{1-1} N$ .

Definition.  $HC := \{a \in V_N : a \text{ is hereditarily countable}\}$ .

Lemma 1.1.

- (a)  $HC$  is admissible;
- (b) If  $\kappa$  is a cardinal greater than  $\omega$ , then  $V_N(\kappa)$  and  $L_\kappa$  are admissibles.

This lemma is obvious for  $HC$  and regular cardinals but requires some argument for singular cardinals. As a consequence we have that each element in  $V_N$  is contained in an admissible set. The following definition and theorem characterize the smallest admissible set  $a^+$  which contains  $a$ .

For the proofs of Lemma 1.1 and Theorem 1.1 see [1].

Definition (Next admissible). For  $a, \alpha \in V_N$ :

- (a)  $a^+ := \cap\{x \in V_N : a \in x \text{ & } x \text{ is admissible}\}$ ;
- (b)  $\alpha^+ := \min\{\xi \in V_N : \alpha < \xi \text{ & } \xi \text{ is admissible}\}$ .

Theorem 1.1.

- (a)  $a^+$  is the smallest admissible set containing  $a$ ;
- (b)  $a^+ = L_\alpha(a)$  for  $\alpha = o(a^+)$ ;
- (c)  $\alpha^+ = o(L_\alpha^+)$ .

Definition.

- (a) We define by recursion on the ordinals:

$$\Omega_0 := \omega;$$

$$\Omega_{\alpha+1} := \Omega_\alpha^+;$$

$$\Omega_\lambda := \sup\{\Omega_\xi : \xi < \lambda\}, \text{ if } \lambda \text{ is limit.}$$

- (b)  $i_o := \min\{\Omega_\xi : \Omega_\xi \text{ is admissible \& } \xi \text{ is limit}\}$ .

$\Omega$  is the function which enumerates the admissible ordinals and their limits. The least fixed-point of  $\Omega$  is a limit of admissibles but not admissible. The least admissible fixed-point of  $\Omega$  is the first recursively inaccessible ordinal  $i_o$ . If  $\lambda$  is a limit ordinal, then  $L_{\Omega_\lambda}$  is a model of the axiom  $\forall x \exists y (x \in y \text{ & } y \text{ is admissible})$ .  $L_{i_o}$  is the least standard model of KP +  $\forall x \exists y (x \in y \text{ & } y \text{ is admissible})$ .

Next admissible sets have some interesting applications in characterizing  $\Pi_1^1$  and  $\Delta_1^1$  subsets of  $N$ . The following result

emerges from the work of several logicians and allows different generalizations. The version here is a special case of a theorem in [1].

Definition. Suppose that  $P$  and  $Q$  are subsets of  $N$  and  $a$  is an admissible set.

(a)  $P$  is  $\Pi_1^1$  in  $Q$  if there exists a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $A[u, \underline{v}, x]$  of  $L_2$  and  $\underline{n} \in N$  such that for all  $m \in N$ :

$$m \in P \iff \text{Pow}(N) \models A[m, \underline{n}, Q] ;$$

$P$  is  $\Delta_1^1$  in  $Q$  if  $P$  and  $N-P$  are  $\Pi_1^1$  in  $Q$ .

(b)  $P$  is  $\Sigma_1$  on  $a$  if there exists a  $\Sigma_1$  formula  $A[u, \underline{v}]$  of  $L_*$  and  $\underline{c} \in a$  such that for all  $b \in a$ :

$$b \in P \iff a \models A[b, \underline{c}] ;$$

$P$  is  $\Delta_1$  on  $a$  if  $P$  and  $N-P$  are  $\Sigma_1$  on  $a$ .

Theorem 1.2. If  $P$  and  $Q$  are subsets of  $N$ , then we have

- (a)  $P$  is  $\Pi_1^1$  in  $Q$  iff  $P$  is  $\Sigma_1$  on  $Q^+$ ;
- (b)  $P$  is  $\Delta_1^1$  in  $Q$  iff  $P$  is  $\Delta_1$  on  $Q^+$ ;
- (c)  $P$  is  $\Delta_1^1$  in  $Q$  iff  $P \in Q^+$ .

#### 1.5. Positive inductive definitions.

Let  $Q$  be a subset of  $N$  and  $A[R^+, X, x]$  an  $R$ -positive arithmetic formula of  $L_1$ . Then  $A$  and  $Q$  induce a monotone operator  $\Gamma_A^Q$  from  $\text{Pow}(N)$  to  $\text{Pow}(N)$ :

$$\Gamma_A^Q : \text{Pow}(N) \rightarrow \text{Pow}(N) ; \quad \Gamma_A^Q(X) := \{x \in N : N \models A[X, Q, x]\} .$$

$\Gamma_A^Q$  is monotone (i.e.  $X \subset Y$  implies  $\Gamma_A^Q(X) \subset \Gamma_A^Q(Y)$ ), and so the least fixed point of  $\Gamma_A^Q$  can be constructed by the following recursion on the ordinals:

$$I_A^\alpha(Q) := \{x \in N : N \models A[I_A^{<\alpha}(Q), Q, x]\};$$

$$I_A^{<\alpha}(Q) := \cup\{I_A^\xi(Q) : \xi < \alpha\};$$

$$I_A(Q) := \cup\{I_A^\xi(Q) : \text{Ord}(\xi)\}.$$

By a cardinality argument there exists an ordinal  $\gamma$  such that  $I_A^Y(Q) = I_A^{<\gamma}(Q)$ . The least  $\gamma$  with this property is called the closure ordinal of  $\Gamma_A^Q$  and denoted by  $|\Gamma_A^Q|$ . If  $n$  is an element of  $I_A(Q)$ , then we define its inductive norm  $|n|_A^Q$  by

$$|n|_A^Q := \min\{\xi : n \in I_A^\xi(Q)\}$$

and obtain  $|\Gamma_A^Q| = \sup\{|n|_A^Q + 1 : n \in I_A(Q)\}$ .

Typical examples of such inductive definitions are Kleene's  $\emptyset$  and its relativized versions  $\emptyset^Q$ . Let  $\{e\}$  be an enumeration of all partial recursive functions and  $\{e\}^Q$  an enumeration of all partial functions recursive in  $Q$ .  $\text{Tot}(e)$  and  $\text{Tot}^Q(e)$  express that  $\{e\}$  and  $\{e\}^Q$  are total, respectively. Let  $<_0^Q$  be the smallest transitive relation such that

(i)  $k <_0^Q 2^k$  for all  $k$ ;

(ii)  $\{e\}^Q(k) <_0^Q 3 \cdot 5^e$  for all  $e, k$  with  $k \in \text{dom}(\{e\}^Q)$ .

Clearly  $k <_0^Q m$  is definable by an arithmetic formula  $B[Q, k, m]$ .

Definition.

- (a)  $C0(R, Q, n) : \Leftrightarrow n = 0 \vee \exists x(n = 2^x \& R(x)) \vee \exists e[n = 3 \cdot 5^e \& \forall y(\{e\}^Q(y) <_0^Q \{e\}^Q(y+1) \& R(\{e\}^Q(y)))]$  ;
- (b)  $\theta^Q(n) : \Leftrightarrow \forall Z[\forall x(C0(Z, Q, x) \rightarrow x \in Z) \rightarrow n \in Z]$  ;
- (c)  $\omega_1^Q := |\Gamma_{C0}^Q|$  .

$\theta^Q$  defines the least fixed point of the monotone operator  $\Gamma_{C0}^Q$ . Further,  $|\Gamma_A^Q| \leq \omega_1^Q$  for all R-positive arithmetic formulas  $A[R^+, x, x]$  since  $\theta^Q$  is complete  $\Pi_1^1$  in  $Q$  (cf. [45]). If  $Q$  is the empty set, we write  $\theta$  and  $\omega_1^{CK}$  instead of  $\theta^Q$  and  $\omega_1^Q$ , respectively;  $CK$  stands for Church-Kleene.

The following theorem indicates the close connections between positive inductive definitions and admissible ordinals. The first part is folklore in recursion theory, proved e.g. in [1]. The second part is a famous result of Sacks and Friedman-Jensen [24].

Theorem 1.3.

- (a)  $\alpha(Q^+) = \omega_1^Q$  for every subset  $Q$  of  $N$ .
- (b) For every countable admissible ordinal  $\alpha (> \omega)$  there exists a subset  $Q$  of  $N$  such that  $\alpha = \omega_1^Q$ .

1.6. The real part of an admissible set.

It is common practice in mathematical logic to identify the real numbers with the subsets of  $N$ . The real part of an admissible set  $a$  is therefore defined as the set of all reals in  $a$ .

Definition (Real part). For  $a \in V_N$ :

$$RP(a) := \{x \in a : x \subset N\}.$$

The problem is to characterize those sets of reals which are real parts of admissible sets. However, before going into these matters, we would like to emphasize Lemma 1.2 below. It follows from Lemma 3.2 and Corollary 7.1 and deals with three simple but important types of real parts.

Lemma 1.2.

- (a) For  $\alpha$  admissible:  $RP(L_\alpha) \models (\Delta_1^1\text{-CA})$ .
- (b) For  $\alpha$  limit of admissibles:  $RP(L_\alpha) \models (\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})$ .
- (c) For  $\alpha$  recursively inaccessible:  $RP(L_\alpha) \models (\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})$ .

By  $\Sigma_n^1$  choice ( $\Sigma_n^1\text{-AC}$ ) is meant the axiom scheme

$$(\Sigma_n^1\text{-AC}) \quad \forall x \exists X A(x, X) \rightarrow \exists Z \forall x A(x, (Z)_x)$$

for any  $\Sigma_n^1$  formula  $A$  of  $L_2$ . Here we use  $\langle \dots \rangle$  as a standard pairing function on  $N$  and write  $m \in (Z)_n$  for  $\langle m, n \rangle \in Z$ . It is well known that  $(\Delta_n^1\text{-CA})$  is a consequence of  $(\Sigma_n^1\text{-AC})$ .

Definition. Let  $Q(m, n)$  be a formula of  $L_2$ , possibly with parameters. If we wish to regard  $Q$  as a binary relation rather than a formula, we write  $m Q n$  for  $Q(m, n)$ . Then we define for any  $L_2$  formula  $A(x)$  the following  $L_2$  formulas:

(a)  $FD(Q, m) : \Leftrightarrow \exists x (m Q x \vee x Q m) \quad (\text{field});$

- (b)  $\text{LO}(\underline{Q}) : \Leftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \forall x \neg(x \underline{Q} x) \\ \forall x, y, z (x \underline{Q} y \& y \underline{Q} z \rightarrow x \underline{Q} z) \\ \forall x, y [\text{FD}(\underline{Q}, x) \& \text{FD}(\underline{Q}, y) \rightarrow (x \underline{Q} y \vee x = y \vee y \underline{Q} x)] \end{array} \right.$   
(linear ordering);
- (c)  $\text{PROG}(\underline{Q}, A) : \Leftrightarrow \forall x [\forall y (y \underline{Q} x \rightarrow A(y)) \rightarrow A(x)]$  (progressiveness);
- (d)  $\text{TI}(\underline{Q}, A) : \Leftrightarrow \text{PROG}(\underline{Q}, A) \rightarrow \forall x A(x)$  (transfinite induction);
- (e)  $\text{WF}(\underline{Q}) : \Leftrightarrow \forall X \text{TI}(\underline{Q}, X)$  (well-foundedness);
- (f)  $\text{WO}(\underline{Q}) : \Leftrightarrow \text{LO}(\underline{Q}) \& \text{WF}(\underline{Q})$  (well-ordering).

If  $\underline{Q}(m, n)$  is the formula  $\langle m, n \rangle \in X$  we write  $\text{FD}(X, m)$ ,  $\text{LO}(X)$ ,  $\text{PROG}(X, A)$ ,  $\text{TI}(X, A)$ ,  $\text{WF}(X)$  and  $\text{WO}(X)$  instead of  $\text{FD}(\underline{Q}, m)$ ,  $\text{LO}(\underline{Q})$ ,  $\text{Prog}(\underline{Q}, A)$ ,  $\text{TI}(\underline{Q}, A)$ ,  $\text{WF}(\underline{Q})$  and  $\text{WO}(\underline{Q})$ , respectively.

Definition. Suppose that  $X$  and  $Y$  are sets of reals,  $X \subset Y$ .  $X$  is called  $\Pi_1^1$  over  $Y$ , if there exist a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $A[X, \underline{Y}]$  and  $\underline{Q} \in Y$  such that for all  $P \in Y$ :

$$P \in X \Leftrightarrow Y \models A[P, \underline{Q}] .$$

Definition.

- (a)  $W0 := \{X \subset N : \text{Pow}(N) \models W0(X)\}$ .
- (b) A set of reals  $X$  is  $\Pi_1^1$  strong if  $X \cap W0$  is  $\Pi_1^1$  over  $X$ .

$W0(X)$  is equivalent to a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula, and so  $W0$  is  $\Pi_1^1$  over  $\text{Pow}(N)$ . If  $X$  is a  $\beta$ -model, then  $X$  is  $\Pi_1^1$  strong. According to Harrington the converse is not true. S. Friedman proved the following theorem (cf. [26]):

Theorem 1.4.  $X$  is the real part of an admissible set iff

- (i)  $X$  is  $\Pi_1^1$  strong and  $X \models (\Sigma_2^1\text{-AC})$  or
- (ii)  $X$  is not  $\Pi_1^1$  strong and  $X \models (\Sigma_1^1\text{-AC})$ .

### 1.7. The companion of a set of reals.

If  $a$  is an element of  $V_N$ , then  $RP(a)$  is a set of reals.

Now we start with a set of reals  $X$  and construct the companion set  $A_X$  in  $V_N$ . The basic idea is to represent the elements of  $A_X$  as well-founded trees in  $X$ . We need some additional considerations, since we work over the ground structure  $N$ .

The notation for trees is standard and essentially taken from Shoenfield [48]: A finite sequence  $k_1, \dots, k_n$  of natural numbers is primitive recursively coded by the sequence number  $\langle k_1, \dots, k_n \rangle$ ; the set of sequence numbers is designated by  $SEQ$ ;  $s, t, s_1, t_1, \dots$  range over elements of  $SEQ$ ;  $\langle \rangle$  is the number of the empty sequence;  $lh(s)$  gives the length of the sequence (coded by)  $s$ ;  $s = \langle (s)_0, \dots, (s)_{lh(s)-1} \rangle$ ;  $s*t$  is the concatenation of  $s$  and  $t$ , hence  $\langle x_1, \dots, x_n \rangle * \langle y_1, \dots, y_m \rangle = \langle x_1, \dots, x_n, y_1, \dots, y_m \rangle$ ;  $s \subseteq t$  ( $s \subset t$ ) holds if  $s$  is an initial (proper) segment of  $t$ . Functions are defined by sets  $X$  satisfying  $\forall x \exists ! y (\langle x, y \rangle \in X)$ , and we use function variables  $f, g, h$  to range over such sets;  $\bar{f}(k)$  is the sequence number  $\langle f(0), \dots, f(k-1) \rangle$ ,  $f$  is a bijection from  $X$  to  $Y$  if  $\forall x (x \in X \leftrightarrow f(x) \in Y)$ ,  $\forall x (x \notin X \rightarrow f(x) = 0)$ ,  $\forall y \exists x (y \in Y \rightarrow x \in X \& f(x) = y)$  and  $\forall x, y (x \in X \& y \in X \& f(x) = f(y) \rightarrow x = y)$ .

Definition.

- (a) A non-empty subset  $P$  of SEQ is called a tree if we have for all  $s$  and  $t$ :  $s \subset t \wedge t \in P \rightarrow s \in P$ .
- (b) If  $P$  is a tree and  $s \in P$ , then  $\underset{s}{P}$  denotes the tree  $\{t : s \subset t \in P\}$ .
- (c) A tree  $P$  is well-founded if it has no infinite descending branch, i.e.  $\forall f \exists x (\bar{f}(x) \notin P)$ .

We now wish to describe the interpretation of hereditarily countable sets as trees. The distinction between urelements and sets is reflected by a different use of odd and even numbers: Codes for urelements are composed of odd numbers; the structure of an element of HC modulo urelements is described by a tree in the even numbers.

Definition.

- (a) Each natural number  $k$  is represented by the N-tree
- $$[k] := \{\langle \rangle, \langle 2k+1 \rangle\}.$$
- (b) A tree  $T$  is called a special tree if for all  $t, k$  and  $m$ :
- (i)  $t * \langle 2k+1 \rangle \in T \wedge m \neq 2k+1 \rightarrow t * \langle m \rangle \notin T$ ;
- (ii)  $t * \langle k \rangle \in T \rightarrow (\forall i < lh(t))[(t)_i \text{ is even}]$ .

Definition (Equivalence of special trees).

- (a) A function  $f$  is an isomorphism between the special trees  $S$  and  $T$ , in symbols  $f : S \approx T$ , if  $f$  is a bijection from  $S$  to  $T$  such that:

(i)  $f$  is order preserving, i.e.  $s < t \leftrightarrow f(s) < f(t)$ ;

(ii)  $s * \langle 2k+1 \rangle \in S \rightarrow f(s * \langle 2k+1 \rangle) = f(s) * \langle 2k+1 \rangle$ ;

(iii)  $f(s) * \langle 2k+1 \rangle \in T \rightarrow s * \langle 2k+1 \rangle \in S$ .

(b)  $S \approx T : \Leftrightarrow \exists f (f : S \approx T)$ .

$\approx$  is an equivalence relation on the class of all special trees;  $f : S \approx T$  is an arithmetic formula of  $L_2$  and therefore  $S \approx T$  a  $\Sigma_1^1$  formula. The following lemma is obvious.

Lemma 1.3 (EA<sub>0</sub>).

(a) If  $S$  and  $T$  are special trees,  $f : S \approx T$  and  $s \in S$ , then we

have  $S_s \approx T_{f(s)}$ .

(b) If  $T$  is a special tree and  $k \in N$  such that  $T \approx [k]$ , then  $T = [k]$ .

Definition. A tree  $T$  is a representation tree if

(i)  $T$  is a well-founded special tree,

(ii)  $\forall s, x, y [s * \langle 2x \rangle \in T \& s * \langle 2y \rangle \in T \& T_{s * \langle 2x \rangle} \approx T_{s * \langle 2y \rangle} \rightarrow x = y]$ .

We write  $REP(T)$  to express that  $T$  is a representation tree. Clearly  $REP(T)$  is logically equivalent to a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula.

The previous definition is similar to Simpson's definition of 'suitable tree' in [52]. For many purposes well-founded special trees would be enough, but adding (ii) has the effect that there exists exactly one isomorphism between two isomorphic representation trees.

Lemma 1.4 (EA<sub>0</sub>). If T is a representation tree and t ∈ T, then T<sub>t</sub> is a representation tree as well.

Lemma 1.5 (EA<sub>0</sub>). If we have f : S ≈ T and g : S ≈ T for two representation trees S and T, then f = g.

Both lemmas follow directly from the definition of representation trees; in the second case we prove f(s) = g(s) for all s ∈ S by induction on lh(s).

Definition (Membership). For special trees S and T:

$$S \tilde{\in} T : \Leftrightarrow \text{REP}(S) \ \& \ \text{REP}(T) \ \& \ \exists x(\langle 2x \rangle \in T \ \& \ S \approx_{\langle 2x \rangle} T_{\langle 2x \rangle}) .$$

Lemma 1.6 ([Σ<sup>1</sup><sub>1</sub>-AC]<sub>0</sub>). Let T and T' be two representation trees.

- (a) If T and T' are N-trees, then T ≈ T' iff T = T'.
- (b) If T is an N-tree and T' is not an N-tree, then T ≠ T'.
- (c) If T and T' are not N-trees, then

$$T \approx T' \leftrightarrow \forall S(S \tilde{\in} T \leftrightarrow S \tilde{\in} T') .$$

$$(d) S \tilde{\in} T \rightarrow \exists !f \exists !x(\langle 2x \rangle \in T \ \& \ f : S \approx_{\langle 2x \rangle} T_{\langle 2x \rangle}) .$$

Proof. (a) and (b) follow from Lemma 1.3(b); the implication from left to right of (c) is obvious by the definition of  $\tilde{\in}$ . Now we prove the converse direction of (c). Since T and T' are representation trees, we obtain from the assumption

$$(1) (\forall \langle 2x \rangle \in T)(\exists !\langle 2y \rangle \in T')(T_{\langle 2x \rangle} \approx_{\langle 2y \rangle} T'_{\langle 2y \rangle}) ,$$

$$(2) (\forall \langle 2y \rangle \in T')(\exists !\langle 2x \rangle \in T)(T_{\langle 2x \rangle} \approx_{\langle 2y \rangle} T'_{\langle 2y \rangle}) .$$

From (1) it follows that the  $\Sigma_1^1$  formula

$$\exists f(\langle 2k \rangle \in T \wedge \langle 2m \rangle \in T' \wedge f : T_{\langle 2k \rangle} \approx T'_{\langle 2m \rangle})$$

is equivalent to the  $\Pi_1^1$  formula

$$\forall f[\langle 2k \rangle \in T \wedge \forall x(\langle 2x \rangle \in T' \wedge f : T_{\langle 2k \rangle} \approx T'_{\langle 2x \rangle} \rightarrow x = m)]$$

By  $(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA})$  there exists a function  $h$  with

$$h(k) = m \leftrightarrow \begin{cases} (\langle 2k \rangle \notin T \wedge m = 0) \vee \\ (\langle 2k \rangle \in T \wedge \langle 2m \rangle \in T' \wedge T_{\langle 2k \rangle} \approx T'_{\langle 2m \rangle}) \end{cases}.$$

Thus we have

$$\forall x \exists f(\langle 2x \rangle \in T \rightarrow f : T_{\langle 2x \rangle} \approx T'_{\langle 2h(x) \rangle}).$$

Hence we can use  $(\Sigma_1^1\text{-AC})$  in order to find a function  $g$  with

$$\forall x(\langle 2x \rangle \in T \rightarrow (g)_x : T_{\langle 2x \rangle} \approx T'_{\langle 2h(x) \rangle}).$$

Finally, by arithmetic comprehension, there exists the following function  $f$ :

$$f(m) := \begin{cases} \langle 2h(k) \rangle * (g)_k(s), & \text{if } m = \langle 2k \rangle * s \in T; \\ \langle \rangle, & \text{if } m = \langle \rangle; \\ 0, & \text{if } m \notin T. \end{cases}$$

It is easy to check that  $f : T \approx T'$ .

(d) follows from Lemma 1.4, Lemma 1.5 and the definition of representation trees.  $\therefore$

The idea is now to identify the representation tree  $T$  with the hereditarily countable set  $|T|$ .  $|T|$  is defined by recursion on the well-founded tree  $T$ .

Definition.

(a)  $|[k]| := k$  for all  $k \in N$ .

(b) If  $T$  is a representation tree but not an  $N$ -tree, then

$$|T| := \{ |T_{<2x>}| : <2x> \in T \} .$$

Lemma 1.7. Suppose that  $S$  and  $T$  are representation trees. Then we have:

(a)  $|S| = |T| \iff S \approx T$ ;

(b)  $|S| \in |T| \iff S \in T$ .

Proof. Let  $d(P)$  be the depth of the well-founded tree  $P$ . Using Lemma 1.6, we prove (a) by a straightforward induction on  $\max(d(S), d(T))$ ; (b) follows immediately from (a).  $\therefore$

Remarks.

1. It is an easy exercise to show that

$$HC = \{ |T| : Pow(N) \models REP(T) \} .$$

2. Comparable representations of hereditarily countable sets as subsets of  $N$  have been considered by Feferman [11], H. Friedman [23], S. Friedman [26] and Simpson [52]. The version here has some advantages which will become clear in section 5.

Definition (Companion). Suppose that  $X$  is a set of reals. The companion  $A_X$  of  $X$  is the following element of  $V_N$ :

$$A_X := \{ |T| : T \in X \& Pow(N) \models REP(T) \} .$$

Lemma 1.8. If  $X$  is a model of EA, then  $RP(A_X) = X$ .

Proof. For  $Q \in X$  we define

$$T_Q := \{<>\} \cup \{<2x> : x \in Q\} \cup \{<2x, 2x+1> : x \in Q\}.$$

Then  $T_Q$  is a representation tree,  $T_Q \in X$  and  $|T_Q| = Q$ . Hence  $Q \in RP(A_X)$ .

Now suppose that  $T \in X$  is a representation tree and  $|T| \in Pow(N)$ . Clearly the set

$$Q_T := \{y : \exists x (<x, 2y+1> \in T)\}$$

is an element of  $X$  and  $Q_T = |T|$ . This implies  $|T| \in X$ .  $\therefore$

Lemma 1.9. If  $a$  is an admissible set or a union of admissible sets, then  $A_{RP(a)} \subseteq a$ .

Proof. Suppose first that  $a$  is admissible and  $T$  a representation tree in  $a$ . By induction on  $T$  we show  $(\forall t \in T)(|T_t| \in a)$  which yields  $|T| \in a$  by  $\Delta_0$  collection.

If  $a$  is a union of admissibles, then the assertion follows from the previous case since  $A_{RP(\bigcup b)} = \bigcup \{A_{RP(a)} : a \in b\}$ .  $\therefore$

The converse direction is not true in general. Let  $card(b)$  denote the cardinality of  $b$  and suppose that  $a$  is an admissible such that  $card(a) > card(Pow(N))$ . It follows  $card(A_{RP(a)}) \leq card(RP(a)) \leq card(Pow(N)) < card(a)$ . But then  $A_{RP(a)}$  is a proper subset of  $a$ .

Definition. An admissible set  $a$  is called locally countable if

$$a \models \forall x(x \text{ is countable}).$$

Lemma 1.10. If  $a$  is a locally countable admissible set or a union of locally countable admissible sets, then  $a \subset A_{RP(a)}$ .

Proof. Choose an arbitrary transitive set  $b$  in  $a$ . Then there exists a function  $f \in a$  which maps  $b$  1-1 into a subset of  $N$ . Without loss of generality we may assume that  $f(x)$  is a multiple of 4 for every  $x \in b \cap N$ . We define a tree  $T^c$  for every  $c \in b$ . If  $c \in N$ , then  $T^c := [c]$ ; otherwise  $T^c :=$

$$\begin{aligned} & \{<f(x_1), \dots, f(x_n)> : n \in N \text{ & } x_n \notin N \text{ & } x_n \in \dots \in x_1 \in c\} \cup \\ & \{<f(x_1), \dots, f(x_n), 4x+2> : n \in N \text{ & } x \in N \text{ & } x \in x_n \in \dots \in x_1 \in c\} \cup \\ & \{<f(x_1), \dots, f(x_n), 4x+2, 2x+1> : n \in N \text{ & } x \in N \text{ & } x \in x_n \in \dots \in x_1 \in c\}. \end{aligned}$$

It is easy to check that each  $T^c$  is a representation tree in  $RP(a)$  which satisfies  $|T^c| = c$ . This implies  $a \subset A_{RP(a)}$  since each element of  $a$  is element of a transitive set in  $a$ .  $\therefore$

Theorem 1.5.

(a) If  $X \subset Pow(N)$  is a model of EA, then

$$RP(A_X) = X.$$

(b) If  $a$  is a locally countable admissible set or a union of locally countable admissible sets, then

$$A_{RP(a)} = a.$$

Proof. Immediate from Lemma 1.8 - 1.10.  $\therefore$

## §2. THE ADMISSIBLE COVER AND EXTENSION OF A THEORY.

After a brief discussion of admissible sets in the previous section, we now turn to theories with these sets as intended models. We begin with two general concepts for describing an admissible universe above a given underlying theory: For a theory  $\text{Th}$  in  $L_1$  we define its admissible cover  $\text{Th}^c$  and for a theory  $\text{Th}$  in  $L_*$  its admissible extension  $\text{Th}^e$ .

The notions of admissible cover and extension are very general and interesting by their own right. We will apply them in §3 and §4 for the proof-theoretic analysis of predicative theories for admissible sets. Proofs, however, are postponed to the appendix, since they require the introduction of systems of ramified set theory which we do not need elsewhere.

### 2.1. The admissible cover $\text{Th}^c$ of $\text{Th}$ .

Let  $\text{PA}^-$  be Peano arithmetic  $\text{PA}$  minus the scheme of complete induction, and assume that  $\text{Th}$  is a theory in  $L_1$  which contains  $\text{PA}^-$ .  $\text{Th}^c$  is formulated in the language  $L_*$  and consists of the following axioms.

1. Ontological and equality axioms. As in ES.

2. Th-axioms. For every axiom  $A[\underline{u}]$  of  $\text{Th}$ :

$$(\forall \underline{x} \in N) A^N[\underline{x}] .$$

3. Kripke-Platek axioms.

{Pair}  $\exists z(a \in z \ \& \ b \in z)$  ;

(Transitive Hull)  $\exists z(a \subset z \ \& \ \text{Tran}(z))$  ;

( $\Delta_0$ -Sep)  $\exists z(z = \{x \in a : A(x)\})$  for all  $\Delta_0$  formulas  $A(u)$ ;

( $\Delta_0$ -Col)  $(\forall x \in a) \exists y A(x,y) \rightarrow \exists z(\forall x \in a)(\exists y \in z)A(x,y)$  for

all  $\Delta_0$  formulas  $A(u,v)$ .

If  $(N, Q)$  is a model of  $\text{Th}$ , then  $(N, Q; Q^+, \in)$  is the least standard model of  $\text{Th}^C$  that contains  $Q$  as element. In this model  $(\text{IND}_N)$  and  $(\text{IND}_\in)$  are trivially satisfied. Observe, however, that  $\text{Th}^C$  is weak with respect to induction. We do not have  $\in$ -induction in  $\text{Th}^C$  and only as much induction on  $N$  as can be lifted from  $\text{Th}$ . For example, if  $\text{Th}$  is PA,  $\text{Th}^C$  contains induction on  $N$  for all formulas of the form  $A^N$ , with  $A$  an  $L_1$  formula, but not for arbitrary  $L_*$  formulas.

Theorem 2.1. Suppose that  $\text{Th}$  is a theory in  $L_1$ ,  $\text{PA}^- \subset \text{Th}$ .

Then we have for any sentence  $A$  of  $L_1$ :

$$(a) \text{Th}^C \vdash A^N \iff \text{Th} \vdash A ;$$

$$(b) \text{Th}^C + (\text{I}_N) \vdash A^N \iff \text{Th} + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash A ;$$

$$(c) \text{Th}^C + (\text{I}_N) + (\text{I}_\in) \vdash A^N \iff \text{Th} + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash A .$$

The implications from right to left are obvious; for the converse directions see the appendix. In 2.4 we will

consider  $\text{Th}^C + (\text{IND}_N)$ ; a general treatment of  $\text{Th}^C + (\text{IND}_N) + (\text{IND}_\epsilon)$  in this vein is not possible. In the special case  $\text{Th} = \text{PA}$ , we have  $\text{Th}^C + (\text{IND}_N) + (\text{IND}_\epsilon) = \text{KPU}$ , and this theory is studied in §3.

## 2.2. The admissible extension $\text{Th}^E$ of $\text{Th}$ .

The definition of the admissible extension is similar to the definition of the admissible cover. Now we suppose that  $\text{Th}$  is a set theory in the language  $L_*$  or an extension  $L_*(\underline{e})$  of  $L_*$  by finitely many set constants  $\underline{e} = e_1, \dots, e_n$ . We also assume that  $\text{Th}$  contains  $\text{ES}^0$ . Since  $\text{Th}$  already describes a universe of sets, we do not form a set-theoretic cover of  $\text{Th}$  but formalize an admissible end extension of  $\text{Th}$ .

In order to define  $\text{Th}^E$ , we first extend the language  $L_*(\underline{e})$  by a new set constant  $M$  to the language  $L_*(\underline{e}, M)$ .  $\text{Th}^E$  then is the theory in  $L_*(\underline{e}, M)$  that consists of the following axioms.

1. Ontological and equality axioms. As in  $\text{ES}$ .

2. M-axioms.

$\text{Tran}(M); b \in M \text{ for all constants } b \text{ of } \text{Th}.$

3. Th-axioms. For every axiom  $A[\underline{u}]$  of  $\text{Th}$ :

$(\forall \underline{x} \in M) A^M[\underline{x}]$ .

4. Kripke-Platek axioms. As in  $\text{Th}^C$ .

We would like to emphasize that the existence of an infinite descending sequence of sets outside  $M$  is consistent with  $\text{Th}^e$ . However, if  $a$  is a model of  $\text{Th}$ , then  $a^+$  is a standard model of  $\text{Th}^e$  that contains  $a$ .

Theorem 2.2. Suppose that  $\text{Th}$  is a theory in  $L^e_*$ ,  $\text{ES}^0 \subset \text{Th}$ . Then we have for any sentence  $A$  of  $L^e_*$ :

$$(a) \text{Th}^e \vdash A^M \iff \text{Th} \vdash A;$$

$$(b) \text{Th}^e + (I_N) \vdash A^M \iff \text{Th} + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash A;$$

$$(c) \text{Th}^e + (I_N) + (I_\infty) \vdash A^M \iff \text{Th} + (\text{IND}_N) + (\text{IND}_\infty) \vdash A.$$

The implications from right to left are obvious again; the converse directions will be proved in the appendix. In 2.4 we analyze  $\text{Th}^e + (\text{IND}_N)$ .

### 2.3. Ordinals and theories.

In order to establish conservation results for the theories  $\text{Th}^C + (\text{IND}_N)$  and  $\text{Th}^e + (\text{IND}_N)$  similar to those of Theorem 2.1 and Theorem 2.2, we introduce infinitary versions  $\text{Th}_\infty^C$  and  $\text{Th}_\infty^e$ . Now we provide the necessary tools from ordinal theory.

For each ordinal  $\alpha$  we define a function  $\phi\alpha$  from ordinals to ordinals by the following recursion:  $\phi0\xi$  is  $\omega^\xi$ ; for  $\alpha > 0$ ,  $\phi\alpha\xi$  is the  $\xi$ th simultaneous fixed point of all functions  $\phi\beta$  with  $\beta < \alpha$ . The least  $\alpha$  such that  $\phi\alpha0 = \alpha$  is called

the least strongly critical ordinal and normally denoted by  $\Gamma_0$ . We write  $\epsilon_\alpha$  instead of  $\phi 1\alpha$  and call these ordinals  $\epsilon$ -numbers. For further details and information cf. Feferman [9] and Schütte [47]. The following definition and its immediate consequences will be needed later.

Definition. For  $n < \omega$  we define:

$$\phi(0|\alpha) := \alpha ; \quad \phi(n+1|\alpha) := \phi(\phi(n|\alpha))0 .$$

Lemma 2.1. For  $m, n < \omega$  and  $\gamma < \Gamma_0$ :

- (a)  $\phi(m|\phi(n|\alpha)) = \phi(m+n|\alpha)$  ;
- (b)  $\Gamma_0 = \sup\{\phi(i|\gamma) : i < \omega\}$  .

Definition. Let  $\text{Th}$  be a theory formulated in (an extension of)  $L_1$ ,  $L_2$  or  $L_*$ .

- (a) We say that the ordinal  $\alpha$  is provable in  $\text{Th}$ , if there exists a primitive recursive well-ordering  $Q$  of order-type  $\alpha$  such that  $\text{Th} \vdash \text{TI}(Q, R)$  .
- (b) The proof-theoretic ordinal of  $\text{Th}$ , denoted by  $|\text{Th}|$ , is the least ordinal not provable in  $\text{Th}$ .
- (c) We say that  $\text{Th}$  is a theory of predicative strength, if  $|\text{Th}| \leq \Gamma_0$  .

Remarks.

1. In practice we have: Two theories  $\text{Th}_1$  and  $\text{Th}_2$  prove the same arithmetic statements, possibly with parameters, iff  $|\text{Th}_1| = |\text{Th}_2|$  .

2. The notion of predicativity will be discussed in more detail in section 6.

#### 2.4. Infinitary systems.

In this subsection we study the admissible cover and extension in presence of the  $\omega$ -rule. As a consequence of this, we obtain a characterization of  $\text{Th}^C + \{\text{IND}_N\}$  and  $\text{Th}^E + \{\text{IND}_\infty\}$ .

In the infinitary proof system  $Z_1^\infty$  we use the language  $L_1$  but now exclude the free number variables.

Basic rules of  $Z_1^\infty$ . As in  $Z_1$ .

Normal rules of  $Z_1^\infty$ .

(&), (v) as in  $Z_1$ ;

$$(\forall n^\infty) \frac{\Gamma, A(n) \quad \text{for all number constants } n}{\Gamma, \forall x A(x)}$$

$$(\exists n^\infty) \frac{\Gamma, A(n) \quad \text{for some number constant } n}{\Gamma, \exists x A(x)}$$

Cut rule of  $Z_1^\infty$ . As in  $Z_1$ .

The rule  $(\forall n^\infty)$  sometimes is called  $\omega$ -rule. It is a rule with infinitely many premises, and so we will have infinite proof trees in general.

$Z_*^\infty$  is the infinitary proof system for  $L_{\underline{e}}$ . Here we allow free variables, but make sure by an additional basic rule that they do not denote natural numbers.

Basic rules of  $Z_*^\infty$ .

(B), (T) as in  $Z_*$ ;

(N)  $\Gamma, n \in N$ , if  $n$  is a number constant;

(S)  $\Gamma, a \notin N$ , if  $a$  is not a number constant.

Normal rules of  $Z_*^\infty$ .

(&), (v) as in  $Z_*$ ;

$$(b\forall^\infty) \frac{\Gamma, b \in a \rightarrow A(b) \text{ for all } b}{\Gamma, (\forall x \in a)A(x)}$$

$$(b\exists^\infty) \frac{\Gamma, b \in a \& A(b) \text{ for some } b}{\Gamma, (\exists x \in a)A(x)}$$

$$(\forall^\infty) \frac{\Gamma, A(b) \text{ for all } b}{\Gamma, \forall x A(x)}$$

$$(\exists^\infty) \frac{\Gamma, A(b) \text{ for some } b}{\Gamma, \exists x A(x)}$$

Cut rule of  $Z_*^\infty$ . As in  $Z_*$

Let  $Z^\infty$  denote one of the proof systems  $Z_1^\infty$  or  $Z_*^\infty$ .

Inductive definition of  $Z^\infty \vdash_\beta^\alpha \Gamma$ .

1. If  $\Gamma$  is a basic rule of  $Z^\infty$ , then we have  $Z^\infty \vdash_\beta^\alpha \Gamma$  for all ordinals  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ .

2. If  $Z^\infty \vdash_\beta^{\alpha_i} \Gamma_i$  and  $\alpha_i < \alpha$  for every premise  $\Gamma_i$  of a normal rule or a cut of degree  $< \beta$ , then we have  $Z^\infty \vdash_\beta^\alpha \Gamma$  for the conclusion  $\Gamma$  of that inference.

We write  $Z^\infty \vdash^\alpha \Gamma$  for  $Z^\infty \vdash_0^\alpha \Gamma$ ;  $Z^\infty \vdash^{<\alpha} \Gamma$  means  $Z^\infty \vdash^\beta \Gamma$  for some  $\beta < \alpha$ . Note that each cut is of finite degree.

Lemma 2.2 (Cut elimination).

(a)  $Z^\infty \vdash_{n+1}^\alpha \Gamma \implies Z^\infty \vdash_n^\omega^\alpha \Gamma$ ;

(b)  $Z^\infty \vdash_\omega^\alpha \Gamma \implies Z^\infty \vdash^\epsilon_\alpha \Gamma$ .

Proofs of this cut elimination property and of the following results can be found in Schütte [47] and Tait [54].

Lemma 2.3. If  $Q$  is a primitive recursive well-ordering such that

$$Z_1^\infty \vdash^{<\alpha} \text{TI}(Q, R),$$

then the order-type of  $Q$  is less than  $\omega^\alpha$ .

Lemma 2.4. For every formula  $A(u)$  of  $L_*(e)$ :

$$Z_*^\infty \vdash^{<\omega+\omega} A(0) \ \& \ (\forall x, y \in N)(A(x) \ \& \ Sc(x, y) \rightarrow A(y)) \rightarrow (\forall x \in N)A(x).$$

Lemma 2.5. If  $\mathcal{Q}$  is a primitive recursive well-ordering of order-type  $\alpha$ , then we have

$$Z_*^\infty \vdash^{\omega\alpha+\omega} \text{TI}(\mathcal{Q}, A)$$

for every formula  $A(u)$  of  $L_*(e)$ .

Let  $L$  be one of the languages  $L_1$  or  $L_*(e)$  and  $Z^\infty$  the corresponding infinitary proof system. If  $\text{Th}$  is a theory in  $L$ , then we write

$$\text{Th}_\infty \vdash_\beta^\alpha \Gamma,$$

if there exists a finite set  $\{A_1, \dots, A_n\}$  of universal closures of axioms of  $\text{Th}$  such that

$$Z^\infty \vdash_\beta^\alpha \{\neg A_1, \dots, \neg A_n\}, \Gamma.$$

$\text{Th}_\infty \vdash^{<\alpha} \Gamma$  is defined analogously. Theorem 2.3 and Theorem 2.4 below are proved in the appendix.

Theorem 2.3. Suppose that  $\text{Th}$  is a theory in  $L_1$ ,  $\text{PA}^- \subset \text{Th}$ .

Then we have for any  $L_1$  sentence  $A$  and  $\varepsilon$ -number  $\alpha$ :

$$\text{Th}^c + (I_\infty) \vdash^{<\alpha} A^N \implies \text{Th}_\infty \vdash^{<\phi\varepsilon_0} A.$$

Corollary 2.1. If  $\text{Th}$  is a theory in  $L_1$  with  $\text{PA}^- \subset \text{Th}$  and  $A$  an  $L_1$  sentence, then

$$\text{Th}^c + (\text{IND}_N) + (I_\infty) \vdash A^N \implies \text{Th}_\infty \vdash^{<\phi\varepsilon_0} A.$$

Proof. By a standard embedding argument, using Lemma 2.4,

we obtain from the assumption that  $\text{Th}^C + (I_n) \vdash_n^{\omega+m} A^N$  for some  $m, n < \omega$ . Cut elimination and Theorem 2.3 imply the assertion  $\therefore$ .

Theorem 2.4. Suppose that  $\text{Th}$  is a theory in  $L_{\underline{*}}(\underline{e})$ ,  $\text{ES}^0 \subset \text{Th}$ . Then we have for any  $L_{\underline{*}}(\underline{e})$  sentence  $A$  and  $\epsilon$ -number  $\alpha$ :

$$\text{Th}_{\infty}^{\underline{e}} \vdash^{<\alpha} A^M \implies \text{Th}_{\infty} \vdash^{<\phi\alpha 0} A.$$

Corollary 2.2. If  $\text{Th}$  is a theory in  $L_{\underline{*}}(\underline{e})$  with  $\text{ES}^0 \subset \text{Th}$  and  $A$  an  $L_{\underline{*}}(\underline{e})$  sentence, then

$$\text{Th}^{\underline{e}} + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash A^M \implies \text{Th}_{\infty} \vdash^{<\phi\varepsilon_0 0} A.$$

The proof of this corollary corresponds to the proof of Corollary 2.1.

### §3. THE THEORY KPU AND ITS RESTRICTIONS.

We will study set theories with minimal standard models of the form  $L_\alpha$ , where  $\alpha$  is admissible, limit of admissibles or admissible limit of admissibles. The situation of an admissible universe is formalized by the axioms of Kripke-Platek set theory. Of course, they do not provide a complete axiomatization of  $L_\Omega$ , but still reflect central properties of this set. Our theory KPU corresponds to Barwise's theory  $KPU^+$  in [1] with PA as additional theory for the urelements.  $KPU^r$  and  $KPU^0$  are subtheories of KPU obtained by restricting induction.

#### Definition.

- (a) KPU is the theory ES with the additional axiom scheme of  $\Delta_0$  collection

$$(\Delta_0\text{-Col}) \quad (\forall x \in a) \exists y A(x, y) \rightarrow \exists z (\forall x \in a) (\exists y \in z) A(x, y)$$

for all  $\Delta_0$  formulas  $A(u, v)$ .

- (b)  $KPU^r$  is  $ES^r$  plus  $(\Delta_0\text{-Col})$  and  $KPU^0$  is  $ES^0$  plus  $(\Delta_0\text{-Col})$ .

At this stage one sees the disadvantage of restricting attention to standard structures: Since  $(IND_N)$  and  $(IND_E)$  are true in each standard model, these models cannot be used to distinguish between KPU,  $KPU^r$  and  $KPU^0$ . To retain the naturalness of standard structures and to get more proof-theoretic information out of the sets  $L_\alpha$ , we introduce the following concept.

Definition. Let  $\text{Th}$  be a theory in  $L_*$ .  $L_\alpha$  is a  $\Pi_n$  model ( $\Sigma_n$  model) of  $\text{Th}$  if  $L_\alpha \models A$  for each  $\Pi_n$  ( $\Sigma_n$ ) sentence provable in  $\text{Th}$ .

We are especially interested in  $\Pi_2$  models and will see that natural theories with different proof-theoretic ordinals have different minimal  $\Pi_2$  models.

### 3.1. KPu<sup>0</sup> and KPu<sup>r</sup>.

The theories  $\text{KPu}^0$  and  $\text{KPu}^r$  are well known from the previous section;  $\text{KPu}^0$  is  $\text{PA}^C + (\text{I}_N)$  and  $\text{KPu}^r$  is  $\text{PA}^C + (\text{I}_N) + (\text{I}_\infty)$ . Hence Theorem 2.1 implies that  $\text{KPu}^0$  and  $\text{KPu}^r$  are conservative extensions of PA in the following sense.

Theorem 3.1. We have for every sentence  $A$  of  $L_1$ :

$$(a) \text{KPu}^0 \vdash A^N \iff \text{PA} \vdash A;$$

$$(b) \text{KPu}^r \vdash A^N \iff \text{PA} \vdash A.$$

In spite of their proof-theoretic weakness,  $\text{KPu}^0$  and  $\text{KPu}^r$  have some important closure properties with respect to set existence. Careful reading of Barwise's book [1] reveals how much of set theory can be developed without using  $(\text{IND}_N)$  and  $(\text{IND}_\infty)$  for arbitrary formulas. Here we just mention  $\Sigma$  reflection and  $\Delta$  separation, which will be needed later.

Lemma 3.1 ( $\Sigma$  reflection).  $\text{KPu}^0$  proves for every  $\Sigma$  formula  $A$ :

$$A \leftrightarrow \exists x A^X.$$

Lemma 3.2 ( $\Delta$  separation). If  $A(u)$  is a  $\Pi$  formula and  $B(u)$  a  $\Sigma$  formula of  $L_*$ , then  $KP\cup^0$  proves

$$(\forall x \in a)(A(x) \leftrightarrow B(x)) \rightarrow \exists z(z = \{x \in a : A(x)\}).$$

As a corollary we obtain from Lemma 3.2 that the second order theory  $(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA})_0$  is contained in  $KP\cup^0$ . Remember that we identify an  $L_2$  sentence  $A$  with its translation into  $L_*$ .

Corollary 3.1. If  $A$  is an  $L_2$  sentence, then

$$(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA})_0 \vdash A \iff KP\cup^0 \vdash A.$$

Some additional conventions.  $\text{Fun}(f)$  expresses that  $f$  is a function;  $\text{dom}(f)$  denotes its domain and  $\text{rng}(f)$  its range.  $f(x)$  is the value of  $f$  at  $x$  if  $\text{Fun}(f)$  and  $x \in \text{dom}(f)$ .  $\text{Fun}_{1-1}(f)$  means that  $f$  is a 1-1 function. It is easy to see that the formulas  $\text{Fun}(f)$ ,  $\text{dom}(f) = a$ ,  $\text{rng}(f) = b$ ,  $f(x) = y$  and  $\text{Fun}_{1-1}(f)$  are  $\Delta_0$  (cf. [1]).

We now adjoin the axiom of countability (C). It is obvious that (C) implies the usual axiom of choice. We use it in order to prove  $\Sigma$  replacement in  $KP\cup^0 + (C)$ .

$$(C) \quad \forall x \exists f (\text{Fun}_{1-1}(f) \& \text{dom}(f) = x \& \text{rng}(f) \subset \mathbb{N})$$

Lemma 3.3 ( $\Sigma$  replacement).  $KP\cup^0 + (C)$  proves for every  $\Delta_0$  formula  $A(u, v)$ :

$$(\forall x \in a) \exists y A(x, y) \rightarrow \exists f [\text{Fun}(f) \& \text{dom}(f) = a \& (\forall x \in a) A(x, f(x))].$$

Proof. We work in  $\text{KP}^0 + (\text{C})$  and assume  $(\forall x \in a) \exists y A(x, y)$ . By  $\Delta_0$  collection and (C) we find a set  $b$  and a 1-1 function  $g$  such that

$$(\forall x \in a) (\exists y \in b) A(x, y) \& \text{dom}(g) = b \& \text{rng}(g) \subset N.$$

Now by  $\Delta_0$  separation we define the function

$$f := \{(x, y) \in a \times b : A(x, y) \& (\forall z \in b)(g(z) <_N g(y) \rightarrow \neg A(x, z))\},$$

where  $<_N$  is the primitive recursive less relation on  $N$ . By  $(I_N)$  we can easily check that  $f$  satisfies our lemma  $\therefore$ .

Remark. Lemma 3.3 implies that the second order theory

$(\Sigma_1^1\text{-AC})_0$  is contained in  $\text{KP}^0 + (\text{C})$ .

It could be shown that the inclusion of (C) does not increase the proof-theoretic strength of theories for admissible sets. We will not follow this track now but rather turn to the minimal  $\Pi_2$  model of  $\text{KP}^0$  and  $\text{KP}^r$ . In §7 and §8, however, we will come back to the axiom (C).

If  $A$  is a formula of  $L_*$ , then  $A^{[\alpha]}$  denotes the formula which is obtained from  $A$  by replacing all unrestricted universal quantifiers  $\forall x(\dots)$  by  $(\forall x \in L_\alpha)(\dots)$ . If  $\Gamma$  is a set of  $L_*$  formulas  $\{A_1, \dots, A_n\}$ , then we write  $\Gamma^{[\alpha]}$  for the formula  $A_1^{[\alpha]} \vee \dots \vee A_n^{[\alpha]}$ .

Lemma 3.4. Assume that  $\Lambda[u]$  is a  $\text{KP}^r$ -axiom set and  $\Gamma[u]$  a set of  $L_*$  formulas. If

$$z_* \vdash_0^n \Lambda[\underline{u}], \Gamma[\underline{u}] ,$$

then we have, for all  $\beta$ ,  $\underline{a} \in L_\beta$  and  $\gamma \geq \beta + 3^n$ ,

$$L_\gamma \vDash r^{[\beta]}[\underline{a}] .$$

Proof by induction on  $n$ . If the main formula of the last inference does not belong to  $\Lambda[\underline{u}]$  or is not the negation of an axiom of  $KPu^r$ , then the assertion follows from the I.H. (induction hypothesis) immediately. Suppose therefore that the main formula  $B[\underline{u}]$  of the last inference belongs to  $\Lambda[\underline{u}]$  and is the negation of a  $KPu^r$  axiom. We fix  $\beta$ ,  $\underline{a} \in L_\beta$  and  $\gamma \geq \beta + 3^n$  and make the following observations:

- (i) Each axiom of  $KPu^r$  is a  $\Delta_0$  formula, a  $\Sigma_1$  formula or an instance of  $(\Delta_0\text{-Col})$ .
- (ii) If  $C[\underline{u}]$  is a  $\Delta_0$  or  $\Sigma_1$  axiom of  $KPu^r$ , then  $L_{\beta+1} \vDash C[\underline{a}]$ .

We now distinguish several cases:

1. If  $\neg B[\underline{u}]$  is a  $KPu^r$  axiom and  $B[\underline{u}]$  a  $\Delta_0$  formula of the form  $B_0[\underline{u}] \& B_1[\underline{u}]$ , then there are  $n_0, n_1 < n$  such that

$$(1) z_* \vdash_0^{n_i} \Lambda[\underline{u}], B_i[\underline{u}], \Gamma[\underline{u}]$$

for  $i = 0, 1$ . By the I.H. we obtain for  $i = 0, 1$  that

$$(2) L_\gamma \vDash B_i[\underline{a}] \vee r^{[\beta]}[\underline{a}] .$$

Hence  $L_\gamma \vDash r^{[\beta]}[\underline{a}]$  by (ii).

2. If  $\neg B[\underline{u}]$  is a  $KPu^r$  axiom and  $B[\underline{u}]$  a  $\Delta_0$  formula but not a conjunction, then the proof is similar.

3. If  $\neg B[\underline{u}]$  is a  $KPu^r$  axiom and  $B[\underline{u}]$  is of the form  $\forall z B_0[\underline{u}, z]$ , then  $B_0$  is a  $\Delta_0$  formula, and there exist an  $n_0 < n$  and a

variable  $v$  different from  $\underline{u}$  such that

$$(3) Z_* \vdash_0^{\eta_0} A[\underline{u}], B_0[\underline{u}, v], \Gamma[\underline{u}] .$$

The I.H. gives for every  $b \in L_{\beta+1}$  that

$$(4) L_\gamma \models B_0[\underline{a}, b] \vee \Gamma^{[\beta+1]}[\underline{a}] .$$

since  $\gamma \geq \beta + 3^{\eta_0} \geq (\beta + 1) + 3^{\eta_0}$ . This implies

$$(5) L_\gamma \models \Gamma^{[\beta]}[\underline{a}] \quad \text{or} \quad L_{\beta+1} \models \forall z B_0[\underline{a}, z] .$$

From (5) and (ii) the conclusion of the lemma is immediate.

4. Now consider the case that  $\neg B[\underline{u}]$  is an instance of  $(\Delta_0\text{-Col})$ . Then we have a  $\Delta_0$  formula  $C[\underline{u}, v, w]$ , a term  $c$  and  $n_0, n_1 < n$  such that

$$(6) Z_* \vdash_0^{\eta_0} A[\underline{u}], (\forall x \in c) \exists y C[\underline{u}, x, y], \Gamma[\underline{u}] ,$$

$$(7) Z_* \vdash_0^{\eta_1} A[\underline{u}], \forall z (\exists x \in c) (\forall y \in z) \neg C[\underline{u}, x, y], \Gamma[\underline{u}] .$$

By the I.H. we obtain from (6) for  $\delta := \beta + 3^{\eta_0}$

$$(8) L_\delta \models (\forall x \in d) \exists y C[\underline{a}, x, y] \vee \Gamma^{[\beta]}[\underline{a}]$$

Here  $d$  is the term  $c$ , if  $c$  is not a free variable;  $d$  is the number constant 0, if  $c$  is a free variable but does not belong to the list  $\underline{u}$ ; if  $c$  is from the list  $\underline{u}$ , then  $d$  is the corresponding term in the list  $\underline{a}$ . From (8) one obtains

$$(9) L_\gamma \models (\forall x \in d) (\exists y \in L_\delta) C[\underline{a}, x, y] \vee \Gamma^{[\beta]}[\underline{a}] .$$

Since  $(\delta + 1) + 3 = \beta + 3^{\eta_0} + 1 + 3^{\eta_1} \leq \beta + 3^{\eta_0} \leq \gamma$ , the I.H. allows us to conclude from (7)

$$(10) \quad L_\gamma \models (\forall z \in L_{\delta+1})(\exists x \in d)(\forall y \in z)\neg C[\underline{a}, x, y] \vee r^{[\delta+1]}[\underline{a}]$$

The desired result follows from (9) and (10) since  $L_\delta \in L_{\delta+1}$  and  $\beta \leq \delta+1$ .  $\therefore$

Theorem 3.1.  $L_\omega$  is the minimal  $\Pi_2$  model of  $KPU^0$  and  $KPU^r$ .

Proof. Suppose that  $A$  is the  $\Pi_2$  sentence  $\forall x \exists y B[x, y]$  and  $KPU^r \vdash A$ . Then there exist  $m, n < \omega$  and a  $KPU^r$ -axiom set  $\Lambda[\underline{u}, v]$  such that  $Z_* \vdash_n^m \Lambda[\underline{u}, v], \exists y B[v, y]$ . Cut elimination in  $Z_*$  yields  $Z_* \vdash_0^k \Lambda[\underline{u}, v], \exists y B[v, y]$  for some  $k < \omega$ . Now choose an arbitrary  $a \in L_\omega$ . Then there exists an  $i < \omega$  such that  $a \in L_i$ . Lemma 3.4 gives  $L_\omega \models \exists y B[a, y]$ . This implies  $L_\omega \models A$  since  $a$  was an arbitrary element of  $L_\omega$ . Thus we have:  $L_\omega$  is a  $\Pi_2$  model of  $KPU^r$  and  $KPU^0$ . The minimality is obvious.  $\therefore$

Remark.  $L_\omega$  is not the smallest standard structure which is a model of all  $\Pi_2$  sentences provable in  $KPU^r$ . Let  $D(N)$  be the collection of  $L_1$  definable subsets of  $N$ ; i.e.  $a \in D(N)$  iff there exists an  $L_1$  formula  $A[u]$  such that  $a = \{x \in N : N \models A[x]\}$ . Then we define by recursion on  $n < \omega$ :

$$D_0^* := N \cup D(N);$$

$$D_{n+1}^* := D_n^* \cup \{\{x, y\} : x, y \in D_n^*\} \cup \{x \cup y : x, y \in D_n^*\};$$

$$D^* := \bigcup \{D_n^* : n < \omega\}.$$

$D^*$  is certainly contained in every  $\Sigma_1$  and  $\Pi_2$  model of  $KPU^0$ .

One can show that  $D^*$  is a model of all  $\Pi_2$  sentences provable in  $KPU^r$  (cf. Jäger [33]).

### 3.2. $KPU^0 + (\text{IND}_N)$ and $KPU^r + (\text{IND}_N)$ .

Theorem 3.1 tells us that the existence of  $\omega$  is not provable in  $KPU^r$ . Now we make use of  $(\text{IND}_N)$  to lift the ordering on  $N$  to the ordinals. Unfortunately, we must be careful with the notion of ordinal in theories without  $(I_\infty)$ .

#### Definition.

- (a)  $\text{Connex}(a) : \Leftrightarrow (\forall x \in a)(\forall y \in a)(x \in y \vee x = y \vee y \in x)$  ;
- (b)  $\text{Ord}_0(a) : \Leftrightarrow \text{Tran}(a) \wedge \text{Connex}(a)$  ;
- (c)  $\text{Ord}(a) : \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \text{Ord}_0(a) \wedge \\ \forall x[x \subset a \wedge x \neq \emptyset \rightarrow (\exists y \in x)(\forall z \in x)(z \notin y)] \end{cases}$  ;
- (d)  $\text{Lim}_0(a) : \Leftrightarrow \text{Ord}_0(a) \wedge a \neq \emptyset \wedge (\forall x \in a)(\exists y \in a)(x \in y)$  ;
- (e)  $\text{Lim}(a) : \Leftrightarrow \text{Ord}(a) \wedge \text{Lim}_0(a)$  .

The  $\Delta_0$  formula  $\text{Ord}_0(a)$  expresses that  $a$  is an ordinal in a weak sense;  $\in$  is not necessarily well-founded on  $a$ . The  $\Pi$  formula  $\text{Ord}(a)$  is the usual definition of ordinal. In the presence of  $(I_\infty)$ , both notions are equivalent, and  $\text{Ord}(a)$  then can be considered as a  $\Delta_0$  predicate. In formal set theories small Greek letters range over the predicate  $\text{Ord}$ ;  $\alpha < \beta$  means  $\alpha \in \beta$  as usual.

#### Theorem 3.2 (Existence of $\omega$ ).

$$KPU^0 + (\Sigma_1 - \text{IND}_N) \vdash \exists ! \xi (\text{Lim}(\xi) \wedge (\forall \eta < \xi) \neg \text{Lim}(\eta)) .$$

This uniquely determined ordinal is called  $\omega$ .

Proof. We write  $A(x, f)$  for the  $\Delta_0$  formula

$$\begin{aligned}x \in N \ \& \ Fun(f) \ \& \ dom(f) = \{y \in N : y \leq_N x\} \ \& \ f(\emptyset) = \emptyset \ \& \\(\forall y \in N)(y <_N x \rightarrow f(y+1) = f(y) \cup \{f(y)\})\end{aligned}$$

and prove by  $(\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_N)$ :

$$(1) (\forall x \in N) \exists f A(x, f) ,$$

$$(2) A(x, f) \ \& \ A(x, g) \rightarrow f = g .$$

By the axioms  $(\Delta_0\text{-Col})$  and (Transitive Hull) we can find a transitive set  $a$  such that  $(\forall x \in N)(\exists f \in a)A(x, f)$ . Let

$$b = \{z \in a : (\exists x \in N)(\exists f \in a)(A(x, f) \ \& \ f(x) = z)\}$$

by  $\Delta_0$  separation. It is easily seen that  $b$  is the uniquely determined witness for our theorem.  $\therefore$

Adding full induction on  $N$  to  $KPu^0$  and  $KPu^r$  gives theories which are proof-theoretically equivalent to  $(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA})$ . One direction follows from Lemma 3.2:

Theorem 3.3. If  $A$  is a sentence of  $L_2$ , then

$$(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA}) \vdash A \iff KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash A .$$

To determine upper bounds for  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N)$  and  $KPu^r + (\text{IND}_N)$  we work with the infinitary system  $KPu_\infty^r$ . The proof of the following lemma is like the proof of Lemma 3.4 with derivations of length  $< \omega$  replaced by derivation of arbitrary length.

Lemma 3.5. Assume that  $\Lambda[\underline{u}]$  is a  $KPu^r$ -axiom set and  $\Gamma[\underline{u}]$  a set of  $L_*$  formulas. If

$$Z_*^\infty \vdash^\alpha \Lambda[\underline{u}], \Gamma[\underline{u}] ,$$

then we have, for all  $\beta$ ,  $\underline{a} \in L_\beta$  and  $\gamma \geq \beta + 3^\alpha$ ,

$$L_\gamma \models \Gamma^{[\beta]}[\underline{a}] .$$

Theorem 3.4.  $L_{\epsilon_0}$  is the minimal  $\Sigma_1$  and  $\Pi_2$  model of  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N)$  and  $KPu^r + (\text{IND}_N)$ .

Proof. Let  $A$  be a  $\Pi_2$  sentence provable in  $KPu^r + (\text{IND}_N)$ .

By Lemma 2.4 we find  $m, n < \omega$  and a  $KPu^r$ -axiom set  $\Lambda[\underline{u}]$  such that  $Z_n^\infty \vdash_m^\omega \Lambda[\underline{u}], A$ . By cut elimination in  $Z_*^\infty$  there exists an  $\alpha < \epsilon_0$  such that  $Z_*^\infty \vdash^\alpha \Lambda[\underline{u}], A$ . Lemma 3.5 then implies  $L_{\epsilon_0} \models A^{[\beta]}$  for all  $\beta < \epsilon_0$ , and consequently  $L_{\epsilon_0} \models A$ . This proves that  $L_{\epsilon_0}$  is a  $\Pi_2$  model of  $KPu^r + (\text{IND}_N)$ .

It remains to show that no  $L_\gamma$ , with  $\gamma < \epsilon_0$ , is a  $\Sigma_1$  model of  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N)$ . Let  $\alpha$  be an ordinal less than  $\epsilon_0$ . Then there exists a primitive recursive well-ordering  $Q$  of order-type  $\alpha$  such that  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash \text{TI}(Q, A)$  for all  $L_*$  formulas  $A$ . Without loss of generality we may assume that  $N$  is the field of  $Q$ . By using transfinite induction along  $Q$ , the well-ordering  $Q$  is lifted to the sets (cf. Theorem 3.2).

$$\begin{aligned} (*) \quad & KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash \exists f [\text{Fun}(f) \ \& \ \text{dom}(f) = N \ \& \\ & (\forall x \in N) [f(x) = \{f(y) : y \in N \ \& \ y Q x\}] ] . \end{aligned}$$

We omit a detailed proof of  $(*)$  since a similar and more general case will be considered in (the proof of) Theorem 4.6

at full length. We may now conclude that

$$\begin{aligned} L_\gamma \vDash \exists f[\text{Fun}(f) \wedge \text{dom}(f) = N \wedge \\ (\forall x \in N)(f(x) = \{f(y) : y \in N \wedge y \not\in x\})] \end{aligned}$$

for all  $\Sigma_1$  models  $L_\gamma$  of  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N)$ . This implies  $\alpha \leq \gamma$ .

The proof is now complete.  $\therefore$

Theorem 3.5.

(a) If  $A$  is a sentence of  $L_1$ , then

$$KPU^R + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash A^N \implies PA_\infty \vdash^{<\phi\varepsilon_0^0} A .$$

$$(b) |KPU^R + (\text{IND}_N)| = |KPU^0 + (\text{IND}_N)| = |(\Delta_1^1 - CA)| = \phi\varepsilon_0^0 .$$

Proof. (a) We observe that  $KPU^R + (\text{IND}_N)$  is  $PA^C + (\text{IND}_N) + (I_\infty)$  and apply Corollary 2.1.

(b) Since  $(\Delta_1^1 - CA) \subset KPU^0 + (\text{IND}_N) \subset KPU^R + (\text{IND}_N)$  and  $\phi\varepsilon_0^0 \leq |(\Delta_1^1 - CA)|$  by [8], it remains to show that  $|KPU^R + (\text{IND}_N)| \leq \phi\varepsilon_0^0$ . So assume that  $Q$  is a primitive recursive well-ordering on  $N$  and  $KPU^R + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash \text{TI}(Q, R)$ . Then (a) implies  $PA_\infty \vdash^{<\phi\varepsilon_0^0} \text{TI}(Q, R)$ , which is equivalent to  $Z_1^\infty \vdash^{<\phi\varepsilon_0^0} \text{TI}(Q, R)$ . By Lemma 2.3 we therefore obtain that the order-type of  $Q$  is smaller than  $\phi\varepsilon_0^0$ .  $\therefore$

We finish this subsection with some remarks concerning the second recursion theorem.

Lemma 3.6 (Second recursion theorem). Let  $A[R^+, \underline{a}, b]$  be an  $R$ -positive  $\Sigma$  formula of  $L_*$ . Then there exists a  $\Sigma$  formula

$B[\underline{a}, b]$  of  $L_*$  (without R) such that the following is provable in  $KP\cup^0 + (\text{IND}_N)$  for all  $\underline{a}, b$ :

$$B[\underline{a}, b] \leftrightarrow A[B[\underline{a}, .], \underline{a}, b].$$

The proof of this lemma can be taken from Barwise [1] with some obvious modifications. We are interested in the second recursion theorem in connection with inductive definitions.

Corollary 3.2. Let  $A[R^+, \underline{a}, b]$  be an R-positive  $\Sigma$  formula of  $L_*$ . Then there exists a  $\Sigma$  formula  $P^A[\underline{a}, b]$  of  $L_*$  (without R) such that the following is provable in  $KP\cup^0 + (\text{IND}_N)$  for all  $\underline{a}, b$ :

$$P^A[\underline{a}, b] \leftrightarrow b \in N \ \& \ A[P^A[\underline{a}, .], \underline{a}, b].$$

If  $A[R^+, x]$  is an R-positive  $L_1$  formula, then this corollary says that the  $\Sigma$  definable class

$$P^A := \{x \in N : L_{\Omega_1} \vDash P^A[x]\}$$

is a fixed point of the operator

$$\Gamma_A : \text{Pow}(N) \rightarrow \text{Pow}(N); \quad \Gamma_A(X) := \{x \in N : N \models A[X, x]\}.$$

Since we do not have  $(\text{IND}_\infty)$  in  $KP\cup^0 + (\text{IND}_N)$ , we cannot expect to determine whether  $P^A$  is the smallest fixed point of the operator  $\Gamma_A$ .

3.3.  $\text{KPU}^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\infty)$ .

An often helpful theorem of Kripke-Platek set theory is the  $\Sigma$  recursion theorem. We will use it, for example, to construct fixed points of certain inductive definitions. The  $\Sigma$  recursion theorem is conceptually clearer than the second recursion theorem: The latter implicitly defines a new  $\Sigma$  predicate whereas the former explicitly constructs a new  $\Sigma$  function. The usual proof of  $\Sigma$  recursion in [1] can be formalized in  $\text{KPU}^0 + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\infty)$ .

Lemma 3.7 ( $\Sigma$  recursion theorem). Let  $\text{Th}$  be a theory in  $L_*$  which contains  $\text{KPU}^0 + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\infty)$  and assume that  $G$  is an  $n+2$ -ary  $\Sigma$  function symbol of  $\text{Th}$ . Then there exists an  $n+1$ -ary  $\Sigma$  function symbol  $F$  of  $\text{Th}$  such that the following is a theorem of  $\text{Th}$ : For all  $a$  and all ordinals  $\alpha$ :

$$F(a, \alpha) = G(a, \alpha, \cup\{F(a, \xi) : \xi < \alpha\}).$$

Corollary 3.3. If  $\text{Th}$  contains  $\text{KPU}^0 + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\infty)$  and  $A[R^+, b]$  is an  $R$ -positive  $\Delta_0$  formula, then there exists a unary  $\Sigma$  function symbol  $I_A$  of  $\text{Th}$  such that  $\text{Th}$  proves for all  $\alpha$ :

$$I_A^\alpha = \{x \in N : A[\cup\{I_A^\xi : \xi < \alpha\}, x]\}.$$

With  $\Sigma$  recursion we define the usual operations on the ordinals like  $\alpha + \beta$ ,  $\alpha \cdot \beta$ ,  $\alpha^\beta$ , etc. In  $\text{KPU}^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\infty)$ , which proves the existence of  $\omega$ , we therefore have a  $\Sigma$  function symbol  $F$  with the property

$$F(\alpha) = \omega^{\{F(\xi) : \xi < \alpha\}}.$$

Hence  $F(\omega) = \omega^{F(\omega)}$ , and so the ordinal  $\epsilon_0 = F(\omega)$  is an element of each  $\Sigma_1$  model of  $KP\cup^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\infty)$ . Actually, all ordinals  $< \phi\epsilon_0^0$  are contained in the  $\Sigma_1$  models of this theory.

The scheme of  $\Sigma_1$  induction ( $\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\infty$ ) is equivalent to

$$\forall a[\forall x((\forall y \in x)\exists z A(y, z) \rightarrow \exists z A(x, z)) \rightarrow \exists z A(a, z)]$$

for all  $\Delta_0$  formulas  $A(u, v)$ , and it is this latter formulation of ( $\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\infty$ ) which we will use from now on. This has some technical advantages for the proof of Lemma 3.9 below. The following lemma takes care of the critical case in the proof of Lemma 3.9.

Lemma 3.8. Assume that  $A[\underline{u}, \underline{v}, \underline{w}]$  is a  $\Delta_0$  formula,  $\alpha$  an ordinal,  $\beta$  a limit ordinal and  $\underline{a}, \underline{b} \in L_\beta$ . Then there exists a limit ordinal  $\gamma$  with the property  $\beta \leq \gamma < \phi(\alpha+1)(\beta+\beta)$  such that

$$L_{\phi\alpha(\gamma+\gamma)} \Vdash (\forall x \in L_\gamma)[(\forall y \in x)(\exists z \in L_\gamma)A[\underline{a}, y, z] \rightarrow \exists z A[\underline{a}, x, z]]$$

or

$$L_{\phi\alpha(\gamma+\gamma)} \Vdash (\forall z \in L_\gamma)\neg A[\underline{a}, \underline{b}, z].$$

*Proof.* We suppress the parameters  $\underline{a}$  and write  $A(v, w)$  instead of  $A[\underline{a}, v, w]$ . Assume that

$$(1) L_{\phi\alpha(\gamma+\gamma)} \Vdash (\forall x \in L_\gamma)[(\forall y \in x)(\exists z \in L_\gamma)A(y, z) \rightarrow \exists z A(x, z)]$$

for all limit ordinals  $\gamma$  with the property  $\beta \leq \gamma < \phi(\alpha+1)(\beta+\beta)$ .

Depending on  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , we define for all  $\xi < \beta$ :

$$\sigma_0 := \phi\alpha(\beta+\beta) ;$$

$$\sigma_{\xi+1} := \phi\alpha(\sigma_\xi + \sigma_\xi) ;$$

$$\sigma_\lambda := \sup\{\sigma_\xi : \xi < \lambda\}, \text{ if } \lambda \text{ is limit.}$$

It is easy to check that  $\sigma_\xi < \sigma_n$  for  $\xi < n$ ,  $\xi+1 \leq \sigma_\xi$  and  $\beta < \sigma_\xi \leq \phi(\alpha+1)(\beta+1+\xi) < \phi(\alpha+1)(\beta+\beta)$ . Now we prove by induction on  $\xi < \beta$ :

$$(2) L_{\sigma_{1+\xi}} \vDash (\forall x \in L_\xi) \exists z A(x, z) .$$

For  $\xi = 0$  this is obvious from (1) since all elements of  $L_0$  are urelements, the empty set or the set  $N$ . If  $\xi$  is a limit ordinal, then (2) follows from the I.H. Now assume  $\xi = n+1$ . Then we have

$$(3) L_{\sigma_{1+n}} \vDash (\forall x \in L_n) \exists z A(x, z)$$

by the I.H. For  $\delta = \sigma_{1+n}$  we obtain from (1)

$$(4) L_{\phi\alpha(\delta+\delta)} \vDash (\forall y \in c) (\exists z \in L_\delta) A(y, z) \rightarrow \exists z A(c, z)$$

for all  $c \in L_{n+1} \subset L_\delta$ . The premise of this implication is satisfied by (3), and so we have  $L_{\sigma_{1+\xi}} \vDash \exists z A(c, z)$  for all  $c \in L_\xi$ . This completes the proof of (2).

Since  $b \in L_\beta$  and  $\beta$  limit, there exists a  $\xi < \beta$  such that  $b \in L_\xi$ . Then (2) gives for  $\gamma_0 = \sigma_{1+\xi}$

$$(5) L_{\gamma_0} \vDash \exists z A(b, z) .$$

Hence  $\beta < \gamma_0 < \phi(\alpha+1)(\beta+\beta)$  and

$$(6) L_{\phi\alpha(\gamma_0 + \gamma_0)} \neq (\forall z \in L_{\gamma_0}) \gamma A(b, z).$$

The proof is thereby completed.

./. .

Lemma 3.9. Assume that  $\Lambda[\underline{u}]$  is a KPU<sup>0</sup> + ( $\Sigma_1$ -IND $_{\epsilon}$ )-axiom set and  $\Gamma[\underline{u}]$  a set of  $L_{*}$  formulas. If

$$z_{*}^{\infty} \vdash^{\alpha} \Lambda[\underline{u}], \Gamma[\underline{u}] ,$$

then we have, for all limit ordinals  $\beta$ , all  $\underline{a} \in L_{\beta}$  and all  $\gamma \geq \phi\alpha(\beta + \beta)$ ,

$$L_{\gamma} \vDash \Gamma^{[\beta]}[\underline{a}] .$$

Proof by induction on  $\alpha$ . The proof of this lemma is like that of Lemma 3.4 with  $\beta + 3^n$  replaced by  $\phi\alpha(\beta + \beta)$  and one additional case since now we also have to treat ( $\Sigma_1$ -IND $_{\epsilon}$ ): Suppose that the main formula  $B[\underline{u}]$  of the last inference belongs to  $\Lambda[\underline{u}]$  and has the form

$$\exists a [\forall x ((\forall y \in x) \exists z A[\underline{u}, y, z] \rightarrow \exists z A[\underline{u}, x, z]) \& \forall z \neg A[\underline{u}, a, z]]$$

where  $A[\underline{u}, v, w]$  is  $\Delta_0$ . Let us write  $C[\underline{u}, a]$  for the formula within the outer square brackets. Then there exist an  $\alpha_0 < \alpha$  and a term  $d$  such that

$$(1) z_{*}^{\infty} \vdash^{\alpha_0} \Lambda[\underline{u}], C[\underline{u}, d], \Gamma[\underline{u}]$$

where  $d$  is a number constant, the set constant  $N$ , an element of the list  $\underline{u}$  or a new free variable. Now choose a limit ordinal  $\beta$  and  $\underline{a} \in L_{\beta}$ . From the I.H. we conclude that

$$(2) L_{\phi\alpha_0(\sigma + \sigma)} \vDash C^{[\sigma]}[\underline{a}, b] \vee \Gamma^{[\sigma]}[\underline{a}]$$

for some  $b \in L_\beta$  and all limit ordinals  $\sigma \geq \beta$ . In view of Lemma 3.8 we can choose a  $\delta$  such that  $\beta \leq \delta < \phi(\alpha_0 + 1)(\beta + \beta)$  and

$$(3) L_{\phi\alpha_0(\delta+\delta)} \not\models C^{[\delta]}[\underline{a}, b].$$

It follows from (2) and (3) that

$$(4) L_{\phi\alpha_0(\delta+\delta)} \models r^{[\delta]}[\underline{a}].$$

This implies the conclusion since  $\beta \leq \delta$  and  $\phi\alpha_0(\delta+\delta) < \phi(\alpha_0 + 1)(\beta + \beta) \leq \phi\alpha(\beta + \beta)$ .  $\therefore$

Theorem 3.6.  $L_{\phi\epsilon_0^0}$  is a  $\Pi_2$  model of  $KPU^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_E)$ .

Proof. This theorem follows from Lemma 3.9 in the same way as Theorem 3.4 follows from Lemma 3.5.  $\therefore$

Remarks.

1.  $L_{\phi\epsilon_0^0}$  actually is the minimal  $\Sigma_1$  and  $\Pi_2$  model of  $KPU^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_E)$ ; we omit details.

2. Theorem 3.6 does not show that the proof-theoretic ordinal of  $KPU^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_E)$  is smaller or equal  $\phi\epsilon_0^0$ . From Theorem 3.5 we can conclude that  $\phi\epsilon_0^0 \leq |KPU^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_E)|$ ; we conjecture that  $\phi\epsilon_0^0$  is the proof-theoretic ordinal of this theory.

3. Cantini [5] considers a similar theory. The approach there, however, is very indirect and uses a series of intermediate reductions.

### 3.4. Inductive definitions in Kripke-Platek set theory.

Let  $L_1(\text{IND})$  be the language  $L_1$  extended by a unary relation symbol  $P_A$  for every R-positive formula  $A[R^+, u]$  of  $L_1$ . The axioms of  $\text{ID}_1$  are the axioms of PA with the scheme of complete induction for arbitrary formulas of  $L_1(\text{IND})$  and the following

$$(P_A.1) \forall x(A[P_A, x] \rightarrow P_A(x)) .$$

$$(P_A.2) \forall x(A[B, x] \rightarrow B(x)) \rightarrow \forall x(P_A(x) \rightarrow B(x))$$

for all formulas  $B(u)$  of  $L_1(\text{IND})$ .  $\text{ID}_1^*$  is the subtheory of  $\text{ID}_1$  where  $(P_A.2)$  is restricted to formulas  $B(u)$  which contain only positive occurrences of the new relation symbols.  $\hat{\text{ID}}_1$  is obtained from  $\text{ID}_1$  by omitting the second axiom  $(P_A.2)$  and by replacing  $(P_A.1)$  by the fixed point axiom

$$\forall x(A[P_A, x] \leftrightarrow P_A(x)) .$$

It is clear that  $\hat{\text{ID}}_1$  is contained in  $\text{ID}_1^*$ . The relation symbol  $P_A$  represents: in  $\hat{\text{ID}}_1$  an arbitrary fixed point of the operator  $\Gamma_A$ ; in  $\text{ID}_1^*$  the least fixed point with respect to all classes definable by formulas which are positive in the fixed point constants; in  $\text{ID}_1$  the least fixed point with respect to all classes definable in  $L_1(\text{IND})$ .  
For further information on  $\text{ID}_1$ ,  $\text{ID}_1^*$  and  $\hat{\text{ID}}_1$  see [4, 16].

$L_1(\text{IND})$  is embedded into  $L_*$  by taking the usual translation of  $L_1$  or  $L_2$  into  $L_*$  and finding a suitable interpretation of the relation symbols  $P_A$ .

Theorem 3.7.  $\hat{ID}_1$  is contained in  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N)$ .

Proof. Take an arbitrary R-positive  $L_1$  formula  $A[R^+, u]$ . By Corollary 3.2 there exists a  $\Sigma$  formula  $P^A[u]$  of  $L_*$  such that

$$KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash P^A[b] \leftrightarrow b \in N \ \& \ A[P^A, b].$$

If we choose the  $\Sigma$  formula  $P^A[u]$  as the interpretation of the relation symbol  $P_A$ , then  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N)$  obviously proves (the translation of) each theorem of  $\hat{ID}_1$ .  $\therefore$ .

Remark. Aczel [unpublished notes] gives the first proof-theoretic analysis of  $\hat{ID}_1$ . It is shown there that  $\hat{ID}_1$  can be reduced to  $(\Sigma_1^1\text{-AC})$  and vice versa; an outline of Aczel's proof is given in Feferman [16].

We use the  $\Sigma$  recursion theorem instead of the second recursion theorem in order to deal with  $ID_1^*$  and  $ID_1$ . Take an R-positive  $L_1$  formula  $A[R^+, u]$  and suppose that  $\text{Th}$  is one of the theories  $KPu^0 + (\Sigma_1^1\text{-IND}_\infty)$  or  $KPu$ . By Corollary 3.3 we find a  $\Sigma$  function symbol  $I_A$  of  $\text{Th}$  such that  $\text{Th}$  proves

$$I_A^\alpha = \{x \in N : A[\cup\{I_A^\xi : \xi < \alpha\}, x]\}$$

for all  $\alpha$ . Then define the  $\Sigma$  formula  $I^A(u)$  by

$$I^A(u) : \Leftrightarrow \exists \xi (u \in I_A^\xi).$$

Lemma 3.10. Choose  $A[R^+, u]$  and  $I^A$  as above.

(a)  $KPU^0 + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\in)$  proves that  $I^A$  is the least fixed point of the operator  $\Gamma_A$  which is definable by a  $\Sigma$  formula; i.e.  $KPU^0 + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\in)$  proves

$$(i) a \in N \wedge A[I^A, a] \rightarrow I^A(a);$$

$$(ii) (\forall x \in N)(A[B, x] \rightarrow B(x)) \rightarrow (\forall x \in N)(I^A(x) \rightarrow B(x))$$

for every  $\Sigma$  formula  $B(u)$  of  $L_*$ .

(b)  $KPU^0 + (\text{IND}_\in)$  proves (ii) for all  $L_*$  formulas  $B(u)$ .

Proof. (a) We work in  $KPU^0 + (\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\in)$ .

(i) Assume  $a \in N \wedge A[I^A, a]$ . In view of  $\Sigma$  reflection we may assume that there exists an ordinal  $\alpha$  such that

$A[(\exists \xi < \alpha)(x \in I_A^\alpha), a]$ . Thus we have  $a \in I_A^\alpha$  by the definition of  $I_A$ . This implies  $I^A(a)$ .

(ii) is proved by  $(\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\in)$ . Assume:

$$(1) (\forall x \in N)(A[B, x] \rightarrow B(x)),$$

$$(2) (\forall \beta < \alpha)(\forall x \in N)(x \in I_A^\beta \rightarrow B(x))$$

and choose an arbitrary  $a \in I_A^\alpha$ . Then  $a \in N$  and  $A[U\{I_A^\beta : \beta < \alpha\}, a]$  according to the definition of  $I_A$ . By the positivity of  $A$  and (2) we obtain  $A[B, a]$  and so  $B(a)$  by (1). Hence

$$(3) (\forall x \in N)(x \in I_A^\alpha \rightarrow B(x)).$$

The  $\Sigma$  formula (3) is equivalent to a  $\Sigma_1$  formula by  $\Sigma$  reflection. Therefore  $(\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\in)$  proves the claim.

(b) The same argument works for arbitrary  $L_*$  formulas if we use  $(\text{IND}_\in)$  instead of  $(\Sigma_1\text{-IND}_\in)$ . //.

Theorem 3.8.  $ID_1^*$  is contained in  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (\Sigma_1 \text{-IND}_E)$ .

Proof. We interpret each formula  $P_A(u)$  of  $L_1(\text{IND})$  as the corresponding  $\Sigma$  formula  $I^A(u)$ . Then each  $L_1(\text{IND})$  formula  $B$  which is positive in the relation symbols  $P_A$  translates into a  $\Sigma$  formula of  $L_*$ . By Lemma 3.10(b) we immediately obtain the assertion.  $\therefore$ .

Corollary 3.4. Suppose that  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (\Sigma_1 \text{-IND}_E) \vdash I^A(k)$  or  $ID_1^* \vdash P_A(k)$  for some number  $k$ . Then  $|k|_A < \phi\varepsilon_0^0$ .

Proof.  $ID_1^* \vdash P_A(k)$  implies  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (\Sigma_1 \text{-IND}_E) \vdash I^A(k)$  by Theorem 3.8. Now we apply Theorem 3.6 and obtain  $L_{\phi\varepsilon_0^0} = \exists\xi(k \in I_A^\xi)$ . Hence there exists an  $\alpha < \phi\varepsilon_0^0$  such that  $k \in I_A^\alpha$ , i.e.  $|k|_A < \phi\varepsilon_0^0$ .  $\therefore$ .

Similar results for  $ID_1^*$  have been obtained by Friedman [unpublished notes] and Cantini [6]. Remark, however, that this corollary does not imply  $|ID_1^*| = \phi\varepsilon_0^0$ . Suppose that  $Q$  is a primitive recursive well-ordering and  $A[R, u]$  the formula  $\forall y(y Q u \rightarrow R(y))$ . Then  $ID_1^* \vdash \forall x P_A(x)$  implies  $ID_1^* \vdash TI(Q, R)$ . It is not clear whether the converse direction holds as well since (P<sub>A</sub>.2) is restricted to formulas positive in the fixed point constants. In the case of  $ID_1$  we have:  $ID_1 \vdash \forall x P_A(x)$  is equivalent to  $ID_1 \vdash TI(Q, R)$ .

Theorem 3.9.  $ID_1$  is contained in  $KPu$ .

The proof of this theorem is like the proof of Theorem 3.8 with Lemma 3.10(b) instead of Lemma 3.10(a).

3.5. KPu.

The previous theorem implies  $|ID_1| \leq |KPU|$ . The proof-theoretic treatment of KPU from above requires impredicative methods which will not be discussed here. Therefore we only state the relevant results and refer to Jäger [30] for proofs. The proof-theoretic ordinal of  $ID_1$  and KPU is called the Howard ordinal and denoted by  $\bar{\Theta}\epsilon_{\Omega_1+1}^0$  in the notation system of [4].

Theorem 3.10. Let  $\alpha$  be the Howard ordinal  $\bar{\Theta}\epsilon_{\Omega_1+1}^0$ .

- (a)  $|KPU| = |ID_1| = \alpha$ .
- (b)  $L_\alpha$  is the least  $\Sigma_1$  and  $\Pi_2$  model of KPU.

There is an additional system strictly between  $KPU^r + (IND_N)$  and KPU which has been omitted so far. In section 6 we will consider the theory  $KPU^0 + (BR)$  which is interesting in connection with predicative mathematics.

#### §4. THEORIES FOR ITERATED ADMISSIBLE SETS WITHOUT FOUNDATION.

In this section we begin the systematic analysis of theories for iterated admissible sets, concentrating on the case that  $\epsilon$ -induction is not available. We are particularly interested in the theories  $ES^0$  and  $KPu^0$  strengthened by the limit axiom

$$(\text{Lim}) \quad \forall x \exists y (x \in y \ \& \ y \text{ admissible}) .$$

These theories have proof-theoretic ordinal  $\Gamma_0$  and so are examples of predicatively reducible theories which have fairly strong set existence axioms at the price of being weak with respect to induction principles. As preparation for studying (Lim) we first introduce the theories  $KPu^0 + (U_n)$ ,  $n < \omega$ , of finitely many admissible universes.

Let  $L_{Ad}$  be the language  $L_*$  extended by a new unary relation symbol  $Ad$  to express admissibility. The meaning of  $Ad$  is defined implicitly by the  $Ad$ -axioms.

##### Ad-axioms.

$$(Ad1) \quad Ad(d) \rightarrow N \in d \ \& \ Tran(d) ;$$

$$(Ad2) \quad Ad(d) \rightarrow (\forall x, y \in d)(\exists z \in d)(x \in z \ \& \ y \in z) ;$$

$$(Ad3) \quad Ad(d) \rightarrow (\forall x \in d)(\exists z \in d)(x \subset z \ \& \ Tran(z)) ;$$

$$(Ad4) \quad Ad(d) \ \& \ a, \underline{b} \in d \rightarrow (\exists z \in d)(z = \{x \in a : A[\underline{b}, x]\}) ;$$

$$(Ad5) \quad Ad(d) \ \& \ a, \underline{b} \in d \ \& \ (\forall x \in a)(\exists y \in d)A[\underline{b}, x, y] \rightarrow$$

$$(\exists z \in d)(\forall x \in a)(\exists y \in z)A[\underline{b}, x, y] ;$$

where the formula  $A$  in (Ad4) and (Ad5) is a  $\Delta_0$  formula of  $L_*$ .

These axioms express that each object satisfying Ad is a transitive set which contains the set of natural numbers and reflects the set existence axioms of Kripke-Platek set theory. Whenever we formulate a set theory in the language  $L_{Ad}$ , we assume that the Ad-axioms are included in the list of ontological axioms. The Ad-axioms do not claim the existence of a set  $d$  with  $Ad(d)$  and so the theory  $\text{Th}$  formulated in  $L_{Ad}$  is a conservative extension of  $\text{Th}$  formulated in  $L_*$ .

The following lemma is proved by straightforward induction on the length of derivations in  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N)$  or  $KPu$ , respectively; unrestricted induction in  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N)$  and  $KPu$  reduces to  $\Delta_0$  induction in  $ES^0$  and  $ES^r$ .

Lemma 4.1. For every  $L_*$  formula  $A[\underline{u}]$  we have:

- (a)  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash A[\underline{a}] \implies ES^0 \vdash Ad(d) \& \underline{a} \in d \rightarrow A^d[\underline{a}]$  ;  
(b)  $KPu \vdash A[\underline{a}] \implies ES^r \vdash Ad(d) \& \underline{a} \in d \rightarrow A^d[\underline{a}]$  .

#### 4.1. $KPu^0 + (U_n)$ .

Extend  $L_{Ad}$  to the language  $L_{Ad}(d_0, \dots, d_{n-1})$  by adding  $n$  new set constants  $d_0, \dots, d_{n-1}$ ,  $n < \omega$ .  $(U_n)$  is the following axiom

$$(U_n) Ad(d_0) \& \dots \& Ad(d_{n-1}) \& d_0 \in d_1 \& \dots \& d_{n-2} \in d_{n-1} .$$

Together with the Ad-axioms this means that  $d_0, \dots, d_{n-1}$  is an increasing sequence of admissible sets. The intended

models of the theories  $KPu^0 + (U_n)$  and  $KPu + (U_n)$  are the structures  $L_{\Omega_{n+1}}, L_{\Omega_1}, \dots, L_{\Omega_n}$ , where  $L_{\Omega_1}, \dots, L_{\Omega_n}$  are interpretations for the constants  $d_0, \dots, d_{n-1}$ . Every  $KPu^0 + (U_n)$  is a definitorial extension of a theory  $\text{Th}_{(n)}$  in the language  $L_{*(d_0, \dots, d_{n-1})}$ . To simplify notation, we identify  $\text{Th}_{(n)}$  with  $KPu^0 + (U_n)$ .

Theorem 4.1.  $KPu^0 + (U_{n+1})$  is a conservative extension of  $KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (U_n)$  in the following sense; we have for every sentence  $A$  of  $L_{*(d_0, \dots, d_{n-1})}$ :

$$KPu^0 + (U_{n+1}) \vdash A \stackrel{d_n}{\vdash} \Leftrightarrow KPu^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (U_n) \vdash A.$$

Proof. Let  $\text{Th}$  be the admissible extension of  $KPu^0 + (U_n)$ . Then  $KPu^0 + (U_{n+1})$  corresponds to  $\text{Th} + (I_N)$  and the conclusion follows from Theorem 2.2(b).  $\therefore$

In order to calculate the proof-theoretic ordinal of  $KPu^0 + (U_n)$ , we also consider the connections between the infinitary versions  $KPu^0 + (U_{n+1})_\infty$  and  $KPu^0 + (U_n)_\infty$ .

Lemma 4.2. Suppose that  $\alpha$  is an  $\varepsilon$ -number,  $A$  a sentence of  $L_1$  and  $B$  a sentence of  $L_{*(d_0, \dots, d_{n-1})}$ . Then we have:

$$(a) KPu_\infty^0 \vdash^{<\alpha} A^N \implies PA_\infty \vdash^{<\phi\alpha 0} A;$$

$$(b) KPu^0 + (U_{n+1})_\infty \vdash^{<\alpha} B \stackrel{d_n}{\vdash} \implies KPu^0 + (U_n)_\infty \vdash^{<\phi\alpha 0} B.$$

Proof. Let  $\text{Th}_0$  and  $\text{Th}_1$  be the admissible cover and extension of  $PA$  and  $KPu^0 + (U_n)$ , respectively. Then  $KPu^0$  is  $\text{Th}_0 + (I_N)$  and  $KPu^0 + (U_{n+1})$  corresponds to  $\text{Th}_1 + (I_N)$ . By Lemma 2.4 we have

$$\text{Th} + (I_N)_\infty \vdash^{<\beta} C \implies \text{Th}_\infty \vdash^{<\beta} C$$

for every  $\epsilon$ -number  $\alpha$  and every sentence  $C$  of the language of  $\text{Th}$ , where  $\text{Th}$  is  $\text{Th}_0$  or  $\text{Th}_1$ . Therefore the lemma under consideration is a consequence of Theorem 2.3 and Theorem 2.4.  $\therefore$

Theorem 4.2. We have for every  $L_*$  sentence  $A$  and  $L_1$  sentence  $B$ :

$$(a) \text{KPU}^0 + (U_{n+1}) \vdash^{d_0} A \implies \text{KPU}_\infty^0 \vdash^{<\phi(n|\epsilon_0)} A ;$$

$$(b) \text{KPU}^0 + (U_n) \vdash^{d_0} B \implies \text{PA}_\infty \vdash^{<\phi(n|\epsilon_0)} B .$$

Proof. (a) From the assumption we obtain by Theorem 4.1 that  $\text{KPU}^0 + (\text{IND}_N) + (U_n) \vdash^{d_0} A$  or  $\text{KPU}^0 + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash^{d_0} A$  depending on whether  $n > 0$  or  $n = 0$ . This implies by Lemma 2.4 and Lemma 2.2 that  $\text{KPU}^0 + (U_n)_\infty \vdash^{<\epsilon_0} A$  or  $\text{KPU}_\infty^0 \vdash^{<\epsilon_0} A$ . The conclusion follows by Lemma 4.2(b) and induction on  $n$ .  
 (b) follows from (a) by means of Lemma 4.2(a).  $\therefore$

Corollary 4.1 ( $\Pi_2$  boundedness). Suppose that  $A$  is a  $\Pi_2$  sentence of  $L_*$ . If  $\text{KPU}^0 + (U_{n+1})$  proves  $A$ , then  $\text{L}_{\phi(n|\epsilon_0)}$  is a model of  $A$ .

Proof.  $\text{KPU}^0 + (U_{n+1}) \vdash^{d_0} A$  implies  $\text{KPU}_\infty^0 \vdash^{<\phi(n|\epsilon_0)} A$  and the assertion follows from Lemma 3.5.  $\therefore$

Corollary 4.2.  $|\text{KPU}^0 + (U_n)| \leq \phi(n|\epsilon_0)$ .

Proof. Suppose that  $Q$  is a primitive recursive well-ordering and  $\text{KPU}^0 + (U_n) \vdash \text{TI}(Q, R)$ . By Theorem 4.2(b) we obtain  $\text{PA}_\infty \vdash^{<\alpha} \text{TI}(Q, R)$  for  $\alpha = \phi(n|\epsilon_0)$ . Hence the order-type of  $Q$  is smaller than  $\phi(n|\epsilon_0)$  by Lemma 2.3.  $\therefore$

Our theories of finitely many universes  $KPU^0 + (\mathcal{U}_n)$  are closely related to Feferman's iterated inductive fixed point theories  $\hat{ID}_n$  (cf. [16]). The language  $L_1^{(n)}$  of  $\hat{ID}_n$  is defined by induction on  $n < \omega$ :

- (i)  $L_1^{(0)}$  is  $L_1$ ;
- (ii) for  $n > 0$ ,  $L_1^{(n)}$  is the extension of  $L_1^{(n-1)}$  by a unary relation symbol  $P_A$  for each R-positive formula  $A[R^+, u]$  of  $L_1^{(n-1)}$ . We call  $P_A$  a fixed point of stage  $n$  with definition clause  $A$ .

The axioms of  $\hat{ID}_n$  are the axioms of PA with the scheme of complete induction for all  $L_1^{(n)}$  formulas and the fixed point axioms

$$\forall x(A[P_A, x] \leftrightarrow P_A(x))$$

for all fixed points  $P_A$  of stages  $\leq n$ .

Theorem 4.3. Let  $n \geq 1$ .  $\hat{ID}_n$  is contained in  $KPU^0 + (IND_N) + (\mathcal{U}_{n-1})$  and in  $KPU^0 + (\mathcal{U}_n)$ .

Proof. By Theorem 4.1 it is enough to show that  $KPU^0 + (IND_N) + (\mathcal{U}_{n-1})$  contains  $\hat{ID}_n$ . In translating  $L_1^{(n)}$  into  $L_{Ad}(d_0, \dots, d_{n-2})$  we have to take care of the fixed points  $P_A$ . By induction on  $m \leq n$  we define an interpretation of every fixed point  $P$  of stage  $m \leq n$  such that:

- (i)  $P$  is interpreted by a set  $\hat{P} \in d_m$  if  $m+1 < n$ ;
- (ii)  $P$  is interpreted by a set  $\hat{P}$  if  $m+1 = n$ ;
- (iii)  $P$  is interpreted by a  $\Sigma$  formula  $P(x)$  if  $m = n$ .

Let  $P$  be a fixed point of stage  $m \leq n$  with R-positive definition clause  $A[R^+, P_1, \dots, P_k, u]$  where  $P_1, \dots, P_k$  are the fixed points of stages  $< m$  in  $A$ . Then  $A^N[R^+, \hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_k, u]$  is an R-positive  $\Delta_0$  formula with parameters  $\hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_k$ .

1. If  $m+1 < n$ , then  $P_1, \dots, P_k$  are elements of  $d_{m-1}$  and we can apply Corollary 3.2 relativized to  $d_{m-1}$ . Therefore we find a  $\Sigma$  formula  $Q(u) = Q[P_1, \dots, P_k, u]$  such that for all  $b$

$$Q^{d_{m-1}}(b) \leftrightarrow b \in N \& A^N[Q^{d_{m-1}}, \hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_k, b].$$

By  $\Delta_0$  separation in  $d_m$  there is a set  $\hat{P} := \{x \in N : Q^{d_{m-1}}(x)\}$  in  $d_m$  which can be used as an interpretation of  $P$ .

2.  $m+1 = n$ . By the same argument as before we now find a set  $\hat{P}$  in the universe of  $KPU^0 + (IND_N) + (U_{n-1})$  to interpret  $P$ .

3. If  $m = n$ , then Corollary 3.2 gives a  $\Sigma$  formula  $Q(u) = Q[\hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_k, u]$  such that

$$Q(b) \leftrightarrow b \in N \& A^N[Q, \hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_k, b].$$

The formula  $Q(u)$  can be taken as the interpretation of  $P$ .

In all three cases the interpretation of  $P$  satisfies the (translation of the) fixed point axiom of  $P$ . The rest of the proof is obvious. ./. .

#### Theorem 4.4.

(a) For  $n > 0$  we have:

$$|KPU^0 + (U_n)| = |KPU^0 + (IND_N) + (U_{n-1})| = \phi(n \mid \varepsilon_0).$$

$$(b) \quad |\bigcup_{n<\omega} KPU^0 + (U_n)| = |\bigcup_{n<\omega} \hat{ID}_n| = r_0.$$

Proof. Part (a) follows from Corollary 4.2, Theorem 4.1, Theorem 4.3 and Feferman's results in [16].  
(b) is a consequence of (a) and Lemma 2.1. ./.

Remark. The idea of adding universes to a given theory first appears in Martin-Löf [41] where he considers constructive theories of types. In [16] Feferman introduces the theories  $\hat{ID}_n$  and subtheories with finitely many universes of his system of explicit mathematics, in order to prove Hancock's conjecture.

#### 4.2. The axiom (Lim).

The axiom (Lim) appears to be very natural in the context of iterating admissibility. It states that every set  $a$  is contained in an admissible set  $d$  and has the effect that all of its models are limits of admissible sets.

$$(\text{Lim}) \forall x \exists y (x \in y \ \& \ \text{Ad}(y))$$

The theories  $KPi^0$  and  $KPl^0$  are formulated in the language  $L_{\text{Ad}}$ ;  $KPi^0$  is  $KPu^0 + (\text{Lim})$  and  $KPl^0$  is  $ES^0 + (\text{Lim})$ . The letters 'i' and 'l' refer to 'inaccessible' and 'limit' according to the models of  $KPi^0$  and  $KPl^0$  in the constructible hierarchy. If  $L_\alpha$  is a model of  $KPi^0$ , then  $\alpha$  has to be admissible, since  $L_\alpha \models KPu^0$ , and a limit of admissibles, since  $L_\alpha \models (\text{Lim})$ , and therefore an admissible limit of admissibles. Ordinals with this property are called recursively inaccessible ordinals.

The following results will show that  $KPi^0$  and  $KPl^0$  are proof-theoretically equivalent although they differ significantly with respect to their models. This is due to the limited principles of induction available in  $KPi^0$  and  $KPl^0$ . We will see later that the theory  $KPi$ , i.e.  $KPi^0 + (IND_N) + (IND_{\in})$ , is much stronger than  $KPl$ .

#### 4.3. Reduction of $KPi^0$ .

We show that  $KPi^0$  can be reduced locally to theories with finitely many universes. For every  $\Sigma$  formula  $A$  provable in  $KPi^0$  there exists an  $n < \omega$  such that  $A$  is already provable in  $KPu^0 + (\mathcal{U}_n)$ .

Definition. Suppose  $m < n < k < \omega$ .

- (a) Let  $A$  be a formula of  $L_{Ad}$ .  $A^{(m,n)}$  denotes an arbitrary formula of  $L_{Ad}^{(d_0, \dots, d_{k-1})}$  which is obtained from  $A$  by
- (i) replacing each unrestricted universal quantifier  $\forall x\{\dots\}$  by  $(\forall x \in d_i)\{\dots\}$  for some  $i \leq m$ ;
  - (ii) replacing each unrestricted existential quantifier  $\exists x\{\dots\}$  by  $(\exists x \in d_j)\{\dots\}$  for some  $j$ ,  $n \leq j < k$ .
- (b) If  $\Gamma = \{A_1, \dots, A_t\}$  is a set of  $L_{Ad}$  formulas, then  $\Gamma^{(m,n)}$  denotes an arbitrary set  $\{A_1^{(m,n)}, \dots, A_t^{(m,n)}\}$  of formulas of  $L_{Ad}^{(d_0, \dots, d_{k-1})}$ .

Lemma 4.3. Assume that  $\Lambda[\underline{u}]$  is a  $KPi^0$ -axiom set and  $\Gamma[\underline{u}]$  a set of  $L_{Ad}$  formulas. If

$$Z_* \vdash_0^n \Lambda[\underline{u}], \Gamma[\underline{u}],$$

then we have, for all  $i \leq m$ ,  $k > s \geq m+3^n$  and all terms  $\underline{a}$ ,

$$KPU^0 + (U_k) \vdash \underline{a} \notin d_i, \Gamma^{(m,s)}[\underline{a}] .$$

Proof by induction on  $n$ . We follow the pattern of the proof of Lemma 3.4 with one difference: Instead of interpreting the set  $\Gamma$  in an initial segment of the constructible hierarchy, we work in the theory  $KPU^0 + (U_k)$ . As in the proof of Lemma 3.4 we concentrate on the case that the main formula  $B[\underline{u}]$  of the last inference belongs to  $\Lambda[\underline{u}]$  and is the negation of an axiom of  $KPi^0$ . Let  $i \leq m$  and  $k > s \geq m+3^n$ .

1. If  $\neg B[\underline{u}]$  is an ontological, number-theoretic, equality or induction axiom of  $KPi^0$ , then it is a  $\Delta_0$  formula and an axiom of  $KPU^0$  as well. So by the I.H. there are no problems.
2. Suppose that  $\neg B[\underline{u}]$  is the axiom (Lim). Then  $B[\underline{u}]$  is the formula  $\exists x \forall y (x \notin y \vee \neg Ad(y))$  and there exist a term  $c$  and an  $n_0 < n$  such that

$$(1) Z_* \stackrel{n_0}{\vdash} \Lambda[\underline{u}], \forall y (c \notin y \vee \neg Ad(y)), \Gamma[\underline{u}] .$$

We have  $i \leq m < m+1 < m+1+3^{n_0} \leq m+3^n \leq s < k$  and obtain by the I.H.

$$(2) KPU^0 + (U_k) \vdash \underline{a}, c^* \notin d_i, (\forall y \in d_{m+1}) (c^* \notin y \vee \neg Ad(y)), \Gamma^{(m,s)}[\underline{a}] ,$$

where  $c^*$  is defined as follows:  $c^*$  is  $c$ , if  $c$  is not a free variable;  $c^*$  is the number constant 0, if  $c$  is a free variable but does not belong to the list  $\underline{u}$ ; if  $c$  is from the list  $\underline{u}$ , then  $c^*$  is the corresponding term in the list  $\underline{a}$ . The Ad-axioms now yield

$$(3) KPU^0 + (U_k) \vdash \underline{a} \notin d_i, c^* \in d_i \wedge (\exists y \in d_{m+1}) (c^* \in y \wedge Ad(y))$$

and the conclusion follows from (2) and (3).

3. Now take  $\neg B[\underline{u}]$  to be a set-theoretic axiom of  $KPi^0$  different from  $(\Delta_0\text{-Col})$ ; e.g.  $\neg B[\underline{u}]$  is  $\exists z(c \subset z \wedge \text{Tran}(z))$  where  $c$  is a constant of  $L_{Ad}$  or a free variable from the list  $\underline{u}$ . There exists  $n_0 < n$  such that

$$(4) Z_* \vdash_0^{n_0} \Lambda[\underline{u}], \neg(c \subset v \wedge \text{Tran}(v)), \Gamma[\underline{u}]$$

for a new free variable  $v$ . By the I.H. we obtain

$$(5) KPi^0 + (U_k) \vdash \underline{a}, w \notin d_i, \neg(c^* \subset w \wedge \text{Tran}(w)), \Gamma^{(m,s)}[\underline{a}]$$

where  $c^*$  is defined as before and  $w$  is a free variable not from the list  $\underline{a}$ . Hence

$$(6) KPi^0 + (U_k) \vdash \underline{a} \notin d_i, (\forall z \in d_i) \neg(c^* \subset z \wedge \text{Tran}(z)), \Gamma^{(m,s)}[\underline{a}]$$

Together with the Ad-axioms for  $d_i$  this gives the conclusion.

4. Assume finally that  $\neg B[\underline{u}]$  is an instance of  $(\Delta_0\text{-Col})$ . Then we have a  $\Delta_0$  formula  $C[\underline{u}, v, w]$ , a term  $c$  and  $n_0, n_1 < n$  such that

$$(7) Z_* \vdash_0^{n_0} \Lambda[\underline{u}], (\forall x \in c) \exists y C[\underline{u}, x, y], \Gamma[\underline{u}]$$

$$(8) Z_* \vdash_0^{n_1} \Lambda[\underline{u}], \forall z(\exists x \in c)(\forall y \in z) \neg C[\underline{u}, x, y], \Gamma[\underline{u}]$$

By the I.H. we obtain from (7) for  $s_0 := m+3^{n_0}$

$$(9) KPi^0 + (U_k) \vdash \underline{a}, c^* \notin d_i, (\forall x \in c^*)(\exists y \in d_{s_0}) C[\underline{a}, x, y], \Gamma^{(m,s)}[\underline{a}]$$

where  $c^*$  is defined as before. We have  $(s_0+1)+3^{n_1} = m+3^{n_0}+1+3^{n_1} \leq m+3^{n_1} \leq s < k$ . Now we apply the I.H. to (8) with  $m$  replaced by  $s_0+1$ .

(10)  $KPu^0 + (U_k) \vdash$

$$\underline{a}, c^* \notin d_i, (\forall z \in d_{s_0+1})(\exists x \in c^*)(\forall y \in z) \neg C[\underline{a}, x, y], r^{(m,s)}[\underline{a}] .$$

The conclusion follows from (9) and (10) since  $d_{s_0} \in d_{s_0+1}$  and  $(\underline{a} \in d_i \rightarrow c^* \in d_i)$ . This completes the proof of Lemma 4.3.  $\therefore$ .

Theorem 4.5. Suppose that A is a sentence provable in  $KPi^0$ .

Then there exists an  $n < \omega$  such that

$$KPi^0 + (U_{k+1}) \vdash A^{(m,k)}$$

for all m and  $k = m+n$ .

This theorem follows immediately from Lemma 4.3. It tells us that  $KPi^0$  is reducible to  $\bigcup_{n<\omega} KPi^0 + (U_n)$ . The following corollaries are especially interesting.

Corollary 4.3.

- (a) If A is a  $\Sigma$  sentence of  $L_{Ad}$  provable in  $KPi^0$ , then there exists an  $n < \omega$  such that A is provable in  $KPi^0 + (U_n)$ .
- (b) Suppose A is a sentence of  $L_*$  and suppose further that

$$KPi^0 \vdash \forall x(Ad(x) \rightarrow A^x) .$$

Then there exists an  $n < \omega$  such that

$$KPi^0 + (U_n) \vdash A^{d_0} .$$

Corollary 4.4.  $|KPi^0| = |KPi^1| = \Gamma_0$ .

Proof. By Theorem 4.4 and Corollary 4.3.  $\therefore$

Corollary 4.5 ( $\Pi_2$  boundedness). Suppose that A is a  $\Pi_2$  sentence of  $L_*$ . If  $KPi^0$  proves

$$\forall x(\text{Ad}(x) \rightarrow A^x),$$

then  $L_{\Gamma_0}$  is a model of A.

Proof. Suppose that  $KPi^0$  proves  $\forall x(\text{Ad}(x) \rightarrow A^x)$ . Then there exists an  $n < \omega$  such that

$$KPi^0 + (U_m) \vdash \text{Ad}(d_0) \rightarrow A^{d_0}$$

for all  $m \geq n$ . With Corollary 4.1 we conclude  $L_{\Gamma_0} \models A$ .  $\therefore$

#### 4.4. KP1<sup>0</sup> and ATR<sub>0</sub>.

Although we do not have  $\epsilon$ -induction in  $KP1^0$  and  $KPi^0$ , these systems are strong enough to develop a reasonable theory of well-orderings. As examples we prove the axiom  $\beta$  and comparability of well-orderings. Then we turn to the connections between  $KP1^0$ ,  $KPi^0$  and Friedman's theory  $ATR_0$ .

##### Definition.

(a) A binary relation r on a set a is well-founded if every non-empty subset of a has an r-minimal element.

$$Wf(a, r) : \iff \left\{ \begin{array}{l} r \subseteq a \times a \quad \& \\ \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \\ \forall x[x \neq \emptyset \quad \& \quad x \subseteq a \rightarrow (\exists y \in x)(\forall z \in x)((z, y) \notin r)] \end{array} \right.$$

(b) The axiom  $\beta$  asserts that every well-founded relation r on a has a collapsing function; it is the universal closure of the following formula

$\text{Wf}(a, r) \rightarrow$   
 $\exists f[\text{Fun}(f) \ \& \ \text{dom}(f) = a \ \& \ (\forall x \in a)(f(x) = \{f(y) : (y, x) \in r\})]$  .

Under  $\Delta_0$ -Sep the well-foundedness of a relation  $r$  on  $a$  is equivalent to the principle of  $\Delta_0$  transfinite induction

$$(\forall x \in a)[(\forall y \in a)((y, x) \in r \rightarrow A(y)) \rightarrow A(x)] \rightarrow (\forall x \in a)A(x)$$

for all  $\Delta_0$  formulas  $A(u)$  of  $L_{Ad}$ .

Theorem 4.6. KP $l^0$  proves the axiom  $\beta$ . Actually, if  $r$  is a well-founded relation on  $a$  and  $(a, r)$  belongs to the admissible set  $d$ , then the collapsing function  $f$  for  $(a, r)$  belongs to  $d$  as well.

Proof. Assume  $\text{Wf}(a, r)$  for some  $a$  and  $r$ . By (Lim) we find a set  $d$  with  $a, r \in d$  and  $\text{Ad}(d)$ . Now we define  $A(u, f)$  to be the  $\Delta_0$  formula

$$u \in a \ \& \ \text{Fun}(f) \ \& \ \text{dom}(f) = \{y \in a : (y, u) \in r \vee y = u\} \ \& \\ (\forall y \in \text{dom}(f))(f(y) = \{f(z) : (z, y) \in r\})$$

and work in the universe  $d$ . By  $\Delta_0$  induction on  $(a, r)$  one proves

$$(1) \ b \in a \ \& \ A(b, f) \ \& \ A(b, g) \rightarrow f = g :$$

$$(2) \ b \in a \rightarrow (\exists f \in d)A(b, f) .$$

The proof of (1) is obvious. For the proof of (2) choose  $b \in a$  and suppose

$$(3) \ (\forall x \in a)(\exists f \in d)[(x, b) \in r \rightarrow A(x, f)] .$$

Since all parameters of this formula belong to  $d$ , we may use  $\Delta_0$  collection in  $d$  to find a set  $c \in d$  such that

$$(4) (\forall x \in a)(\exists f \in c)[(x, b) \in r \rightarrow A(x, f)].$$

Then

$$g := \cup \{f \in c : (\exists x \in a)[(x, b) \in r \& A(x, f)]\}$$

is an element of  $d$  by  $\Delta_0$  separation in  $d$ .

$$h := g \cup \{(b, \{g(x) : (x, b) \in r\})\}$$

is also in  $d$  and has the property  $A(b, h)$ . This proves (2).

By  $(\Delta_0\text{-Sep})$  we define the set

$$f := \{(x, y) \in a \times d : (\exists f \in d)(A(x, f) \& f(x) = y)\}$$

which is the collapsing function for  $(a, r)$ . In fact, by  $\Delta_0$  collection applied to (2), we can see that  $f \in d$ , too.  $\therefore$

Remark. The existence of a collapsing function for  $(a, r)$  does not imply that  $r$  is well-founded on  $a$  as long as we work in theories without  $(I_\infty)$ . In the presence of  $(I_\infty)$ , however, we have for every binary relation  $r$  on  $a$  that

$$\exists f(f \text{ collapsing function for } (a, r)) \rightarrow Wf(a, r)$$

and therefore the axiom  $\beta$  has the effect of making the  $\Pi$  predicate  $Wf(a, r)$  a  $\Delta$  predicate.

Definition.

(a) We write  $Lo(a, r)$  if  $r \subset a \times a$  is a linear ordering of  $a$ .

(b)  $r$  is a well-ordering of  $a$  if  $r$  is a well-founded linear ordering of  $a$ ;

$$Wo(a,r) : \Leftrightarrow Lo(a,r) \ \& \ Wf(a,r).$$

(c) If  $r$  and  $s$  are linear orderings of  $a$  and  $b$ , respectively, then we write

$$f : (a,r) \leq (b,s)$$

to express that  $f$  is an order-preserving map of  $(a,r)$  onto an initial segment of  $(b,s)$ . It is the conjunction of the following statements:

- (i)  $Lo(a,r) \ \& \ Lo(b,s) \ \& \ Fun(f) \ \& \ dom(f) = a \ \& \ rng(f) \subset b ;$
- (ii)  $(\forall x,y \in a)[(x,y) \in r \rightarrow (f(x),f(y)) \in s] ;$
- (iii)  $(\forall x \in a)(\forall y \in b)[(y,f(x)) \in s \rightarrow (\exists z \in a)((z,x) \in r \ \& \ y = f(z))] .$

(d) Comparability of well-orderings is the sentence expressing that any two well-orderings are comparable; it is the (universal closure of the) following formula:

$$Wo(a,r) \ \& \ Wo(b,s) \rightarrow \exists f[f : (a,r) \leq (b,s) \vee f : (b,s) \leq (a,r)]$$

Theorem 4.7.  $KP1^0$  proves comparability of well-orderings.

Proof. Assume  $Wo(a,r)$  and  $Wo(b,s)$ . By the axiom  $\beta$ , which is provable in  $KP1^0$ , there exist collapsing functions  $f$  for  $(a,r)$  and  $g$  for  $(b,s)$ . By induction on  $(a,r)$  we can prove that for every  $c \in a$  one of the following three conditions holds:

(1)  $(\exists x \in b)(f(c) = g(x)) ,$

(2)  $f(c) = \text{rng}(g)$ ,

(3)  $(\exists x \in a)(\{(x, c) \in r \wedge f(x) = \text{rng}(g)\})$ .

This implies one of the following alternatives:

(4)  $(\forall x \in a)(\exists y \in b)(f(x) = g(y))$ ,

(5)  $(\exists x \in a)(f(x) = \text{rng}(g))$ .

In the case of (4) we have  $h : (a, r) \leq (b, s)$  for  $h$  defined

by  $h := \{(x, y) \in a \times b : f(x) = g(y)\}$ .

In the case of (5) we have  $h' : (b, s) \leq (a, r)$  for  $h'$  defined  
by  $h' := \{(x, y) \in b \times a : g(x) = f(y)\}$ .  $\therefore$

Remark. An analysis of the previous proof shows that comparability of well-orderings is provable in the theory  $\text{ES}^0 +$  (Axiom  $\beta$ ).

In the rest of this subsection we discuss the connections between  $\text{KP}^0_1$  and the theory  $\text{ATR}_0$  introduced by Friedman in [21, 22]. His work was later incorporated and expanded in Friedman-McAloon-Simpson [25] and Simpson [51, 52]. The work of Steel also contributed to the discovery of  $\text{ATR}_0$  as a natural subsystem of second order arithmetic.

For any arithmetic formula  $B[X, Y, u]$  of  $L_2$  and any binary relation  $Q$  on  $N$  we introduce the  $L_2$  formula  $H_B(X, Y, Q)$ , defined by

$$H_B(X, Y, Q) : \Leftrightarrow \forall x \forall y (\langle x, y \rangle \in Y \leftrightarrow B[X, (Y)_Q^y, x]) ,$$

where  $(Y)_{Q}^Y$  is the set  $\{<x,z> \in Y : z Q y\}$ .  $H_B(X,Y,Q)$  means that  $Y$  codes the  $B$ -hierarchy obtained by iterating the operation  $Q \rightarrow \{x : B[X,Q,x]\}$  along  $Q$ ;  $X$  acts as a set parameter in this process.

The theory  $ATR_0$  is formulated in  $L_2$  and consists of elementary analysis with restricted induction  $EA_0$  plus the scheme (ATR) of arithmetic transfinite recursion

$$(ATR) \forall Z[\text{WO}(Z) \rightarrow \forall X \exists Y H_B(X,Y,Z)]$$

for every arithmetic formula  $B[X,Y,u]$ . (ATR) says that every well-ordering has a  $B$ -hierarchy for all  $B$  in  $\Pi_0^1$ .

Theorem 4.8.  $ATR_0$  is contained in  $KP1^0$ ; i.e.

$$ATR_0 \vdash A \implies KP1^0 \vdash A$$

for every sentence  $A$  of  $L_2$  (which is identified with its translation into  $L_{Ad}$ ).

Proof. Only the principle (ATR) requires any special consideration. Fix an arbitrary arithmetic formula  $B[U,V,u]$ , a set of natural numbers  $X$  and a binary relation coded by the set  $Z$ . By (Lim) there exists an admissible set  $d$  which contains  $X$  and  $Z$ . Now assume  $\text{WO}(Z)$  so that we have transfinite induction along  $Z$  for all  $\Delta_0$  formulas. Define  $H(k,U)$  to be the  $\Delta_0$  formula

$$H_B(X,U,Z|k) \quad \text{where} \quad Z|k := \{<x,y> \in Z : <y,k> \in Z \vee y = k\}.$$

As in the proof of the axiom  $\beta$ , induction on  $Z$  gives:

$$(1) H(k, U) \& H(k, V) \rightarrow (\forall x \in N)(\langle x, k \rangle \in Z \rightarrow (U)_x = (V)_x);$$

$$(2) k \in N \rightarrow (\exists Y \in d)H(k, Y).$$

Hence we obtain a B-hierarchy  $U$  along  $Z$  by defining

$$U := \{\langle x, y \rangle \in N \times N : (\exists Y \in d)(H(y, Y) \& x \in (Y)_y)\}. \quad ./.$$

Remark. It is open whether  $KPi^0$  or  $KPi^0$  can be embedded into  $ATR_0$ . We can prove with recursion-theoretic methods that each theory  $KPu^0 + (U_n)$  is contained in  $ATR_0$ . In view of Theorem 4.5 this gives the proof-theoretic equivalence of  $KPi^0$ ,  $KPi^0$  and  $ATR_0$ .

Here we show the slightly weaker result that  $\hat{ID}_n$  is contained in  $ATR_0$  for  $n < \omega$ . In the proof we make use of the fact that  $ATR_0$  proves the existence of countable  $\omega$ -models of  $(\Sigma_1^1\text{-AC})$  (due to Friedman and Simpson [22,51]) and of Aczel's interpretation of  $\hat{ID}_1$  in  $(\Sigma_1^1\text{-AC})$  as described in [16]. In that paper the following lemma is proved.

Lemma 4.4. For every R-positive arithmetic formula  $A[R^+, \underline{x}, u]$  we can find a  $\Sigma_1^1$  formula  $\hat{Q}[\underline{x}, u]$  such that  $(\Sigma_1^1\text{-AC})$  proves:

$$\hat{Q}[\underline{x}, u] \leftrightarrow A[\hat{Q}[\underline{x}, .], u].$$

Theorem 4.9.  $\hat{ID}_n$  is contained in  $ATR_0$  for every  $n < \omega$ .

Proof. Suppose that  $n < \omega$  is given. By induction on  $m \leq n$  we show that each fixed point  $P$  of stage  $m$  can be interpreted by a set  $\hat{P}$  in  $ATR_0$ . Then each  $L_1^{(n)}$  formula translates

into an arithmetic formula of  $L_2$  and the scheme of complete induction in  $ID_n$  reduces to restricted induction in  $ATR_o$ . Suppose that  $P$  is a fixed point of stage  $m \leq n$  with R-positive definition clause  $A[R^+, P_1, \dots, P_k, u]$  where  $P_1, \dots, P_k$  are fixed points of stages  $< m$ . By the I.H. there exist sets  $\hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_k$  in  $ATR_o$  which interpret  $P_1, \dots, P_k$ . By Friedman [22] and Simpson [51]  $ATR_o$  proves the existence of a set  $M$  such that  $\hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_k \in M := \{(M)_x : x \in N\}$  and

$$ATR_o \vdash B^M$$

for each sentence  $B$  provable in  $(\Sigma_1^1\text{-AC})$ . Here  $B^M$  is the arithmetic formula obtained from  $B$  by replacing all quantifiers  $\forall X(\dots X\dots)$  and  $\exists Y(\dots Y\dots)$  in  $B$  by  $\forall x(\dots (M)_x \dots)$  and  $\exists y(\dots (M)_y \dots)$ , respectively. By Lemma 4.4 there exists a  $\Sigma_1^1$  formula  $Q[\hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_k, u]$  such that  $ATR_o$  proves

$$\hat{Q}^M[\hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_k, u] \leftrightarrow A[Q^M[\hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_k, x], \hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_k, u].$$

We define  $\hat{P} := \{x : \hat{Q}^M[\hat{P}_1, \dots, \hat{P}_k, x]\}$  by arithmetic comprehension and have the interpretation of the fixed point  $P$ . The rest of the embedding theorem is obvious.  $\therefore$ .

Corollary 4.6.  $|KPi^o| = |KPl^o| = |ATR_o| = \Gamma_o$ .

Proof. By Theorem 4.4, Corollary 4.4, Theorem 4.8 and Theorem 4.9.  $\therefore$ .

Remark. For an alternative proof of  $|ATR_o| = \Gamma_o$ , using Gödel's second incompleteness theorem, see Friedman-McAloon-Simpson [25].

4.5. The class of well-founded sets in  $KPi^0$ .

Sets are not necessarily well-founded in  $KPi^0$ . Therefore we introduce the class  $Hwf$  of all hereditarily well-founded sets and study the closure properties of  $Hwf$  in the theory  $KPi^0$ .

Definition. A set  $a$  is called hereditarily well-founded if there exists a transitive set  $b \supset a$  which is well-founded with respect to  $\in$ :

$$Hwf(a) : \Leftrightarrow \exists z(\text{Tran}(z) \ \& \ a \subset z \ \& \ Wf(z, \in | z \times z)) .$$

If  $TC(a)$  is the transitive closure of  $a$ , then  $a$  is hereditarily well-founded provided that  $TC(a)$  is well-founded. In theories with restricted induction it is not always clear whether the transitive closure exists, and so we have chosen this slightly unusual definition.

Let  $Th_0$  and  $Th_1$  be theories in the language  $L_{Ad}$ . Each  $L_{Ad}$  formula  $K[u]$  defines a class  $K = \{x : K[x]\}$  in  $V_N$ . We say that  $K$  is an inner model of  $Th_0$  in  $Th_1$  if

(i)  $Th_1 \vdash \forall x \forall y(x \in y \ \& \ K[y] \rightarrow K[x]) ,$

(ii)  $Th_1 \vdash A^K$

for all sentences  $A$  provable in  $Th_0$ .  $A^K$  is the formula that we obtain from  $A$  if we replace all unrestricted quantifiers  $\forall x(\dots)$  and  $\exists x(\dots)$  by  $\forall x(K[x] \rightarrow \dots)$  and  $\exists x(K[x] \ \& \ \dots)$ , respectively.

Lemma 4.5.

(a)  $KPi^0 \vdash a \in b \ \& \ Hwf(b) \rightarrow Hwf(a)$ .

(b)  $KPi^0 \vdash Hwf(a_1) \ \& \dots \ \& \ Hwf(a_n) \rightarrow A^{Hwf}[a_1, \dots, a_n]$

if  $A[u_1, \dots, u_n]$  is an instance of (Pair), (Transitive Hull),  $(\Delta_o\text{-Sep})$ ,  $(I_N)$ ,  $(I_E)$  or the axiom  $\beta$ .

(c) There exists an instance  $A[u_1, \dots, u_n]$  of  $(\Delta_o\text{-Col})$  such that

$KPi^0 \not\vdash Hwf(a_1) \ \& \dots \ \& \ Hwf(a_n) \rightarrow A^{Hwf}[a_1, \dots, a_n]$ .

Proof. (a) and (b) follow from the definition of  $Hwf$ .

(c) Now assume that

$KPi^0 \vdash Hwf(a_1) \ \& \dots \ \& \ Hwf(a_n) \rightarrow A^{Hwf}[a_1, \dots, a_n]$

for all instances of  $(\Delta_o\text{-Col})$ . Then  $Hwf$  is an inner model of  $KPu^r + (\text{Axiom } \beta)$  in  $KPi^0$ . Consequently  $|KPu^r + (\text{Axiom } \beta)| \leq |KPi^0| \leq r_o$ . By Theorem 8.4 this is a contradiction.  $\therefore$

Theorem 4.10.

(a)  $Hwf$  is an inner model of  $ES^r + (\text{Axiom } \beta)$  in  $KPi^0$  but not an inner model of  $KPu^r$ .

(b) For every sentence  $A$  of  $L_2$  we have:

$$ES^r + (\text{Axiom } \beta) \vdash A \implies KPi^0 \vdash A.$$

Proof. By Lemma 4.5.  $\therefore$

## §5. HYPERARITHMETIC SETS IN ATR<sub>0</sub>.

The essential purpose of this section is to provide the necessary tools for interpreting theories for admissible sets in subsystems of analysis. We take up the notions of section 1.6 and combine them with ideas from the theory of hyperarithmetic sets à la Kleene, Spector et al. (cf. [45]). Admissible sets, for example, are coded by collections of (relativized) hyperarithmetic representation trees.

We begin with some basic definitions. The set  $P \in \text{Pow}(N)$  is recursive in the set  $Q \in \text{Pow}(N)$  if there exists a total function  $\{\epsilon\}^Q$ , recursive in  $Q$ , such that  $P = \{\epsilon; Q\}$  where we define  $\{\epsilon; Q\} := \{x : \{\epsilon\}^Q(x) = 1\}$ . The jump of  $Q$  is the set

$$j(Q) := \{\epsilon : \exists x(\{\epsilon\}^Q(\epsilon) = x)\}.$$

The iteration of the jump operation along the ordinals is given by transfinite recursion as follows:

$$H_0 := \emptyset;$$

$$H_{\alpha+1} := j(H_\alpha);$$

$$H_\lambda := \text{disjoint union of } H_\beta, \beta < \lambda, \text{ if } \lambda \text{ is limit.}$$

In order to carry through this definition and its relativized versions in subsystems of analysis, we represent (initial segments of the) ordinals by elements of the sets  $0$  and  $0^Q$  defined in section 1.5.

From the work of Friedman and Simpson we know that many important theorems on hyperarithmetic sets can be pushed

through in  $\text{ATR}_0$ , and several of their results will be used in this section. The following two lemmas go back to Friedman [20,22] and Simpson [51].

Lemma 5.1.  $\text{ATR}_0$  proves the  $\Sigma_1^1$  axiom of choice; i.e.

$$\text{ATR}_0 \vdash \forall x \exists X A(x, X) \rightarrow \exists Z \forall x A(x, (Z)_x)$$

for every  $\Sigma_1^1$  formula  $A(u, X)$  of  $L_2$ .

Lemma 5.2 (Numerical  $\Pi_1^1$  uniformization). For every  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $A[\underline{x}, \underline{u}, v]$  there exists a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $A'[\underline{x}, \underline{u}, y]$  such that  $\text{ATR}_0$  proves:

$$(a) \forall y (A'[\underline{x}, \underline{u}, y] \rightarrow A[\underline{x}, \underline{u}, y]);$$

$$(b) \exists y A[\underline{x}, \underline{u}, y] \rightarrow \exists ! y A'[\underline{x}, \underline{u}, y].$$

Definition. Let  $H(X, Y, e)$  be the arithmetic formula expressing that for all  $k <_0^X e$  or  $k = e$ :

$$(i) (Y)_k = X, \text{ if } k = 0;$$

$$(ii) (Y)_k = j((Y)_m), \text{ if } k = 2^m;$$

$$(iii) (Y)_k = \{<x, y> : \exists z (\{m\}^X(z) = y \& x \in (Y)_y)\}, \text{ if } k = 3 \cdot 5^m.$$

$H(X, Y, e)$  says that  $Y$  is the jump hierarchy starting with  $X$  and iterated along the ordering coded by  $e$ . One can easily show that the principle (ATR) of arithmetic transfinite recursion is equivalent to the assertion that  $Y$  exists for all  $X$  and  $e \in 0^X$ ; such a jump hierarchy is unique in the sense below (cf. [25,52]).

Lemma 5.3.  $\text{ATR}_0$  proves

- (a)  $\emptyset^X(e) \rightarrow \exists Y H(X, Y, e)$  ;  
(b)  $\emptyset^X(e) \& H(X, Y, e) \& H(X, Z, e) \rightarrow (Y)_e = (Z)_e$ .

Given an element  $e$  in  $\emptyset^X$  and  $H(X, Y, e)$ , we write  $H_e^X$  for  $(Y)_e$ . By the previous lemma the sets  $H_e^X$  uniquely exist for all  $e$  in  $\emptyset^X$ . Following Kleene we call  $Y$  hyperarithmetic in  $X$  if for some  $e$  in  $\emptyset^X$ ,  $Y$  is recursive in  $H_e^X$ ;  $Y$  is hyperarithmetic if it is hyperarithmetic in the empty set.

Definition.  $HYP(X, Y) : \Leftrightarrow \exists e \exists k [\emptyset^X(e) \& \text{Tot}^X(k) \& \forall Z (H(X, Z, e) \rightarrow Y = (k; (Z)_e))]$ .

Using the  $\Sigma_1^1$  axiom of choice, we may consider  $HYP(X, Y)$  as a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula in  $\text{ATR}_0$ . In order to increase readability we often write  $e \in \emptyset^X$ ,  $Y \in HYP(X)$ ,  $e \in \emptyset$  and  $Y \in HYP$  instead of  $\emptyset^X(e)$ ,  $HYP(X, Y)$ ,  $\emptyset(e)$  and  $HYP(\emptyset, Y)$ , respectively, although these formulas do not define sets in  $\text{ATR}_0$ . From the definition of  $HYP(X, Y)$  and Lemma 5.1 we conclude:

Lemma 5.4. For every  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $A[X, Y, \underline{u}]$  there exists a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $B[X, \underline{u}]$  such that

$$\text{ATR}_0 \vdash (\exists Y \in HYP(X)) A[X, Y, \underline{u}] \leftrightarrow B[X, \underline{u}] .$$

The Suslin-Kleene theorem is one of the most important results in the theory of hyperarithmetic sets since it characterizes the sets hyperarithmetic in  $X$  as the sets  $\Delta_1^1$

in  $X$ . It is known from Friedman [22] and Simpson [52] that Suslin-Kleene is provable in  $\text{ATR}_0$ .

Theorem 5.1 (Suslin-Kleene theorem).

(a) There exist a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $A[X, u, v]$  and a  $\Sigma_1^1$  formula  $B[X, u, v]$  such that  $\text{ATR}_0$  proves:

$$(i) Y \in \text{HYP}(X) \rightarrow \exists x \forall y(y \in Y \leftrightarrow A[X, x, y]) ;$$

$$(ii) Y \in \text{HYP}(X) \rightarrow \exists x \forall y(y \in Y \leftrightarrow B[X, x, y]) .$$

(b) If  $A[X, \underline{u}, v]$  is a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula and  $B[X, \underline{u}, v]$  a  $\Sigma_1^1$  formula, then the following is a theorem of  $\text{ATR}_0$ :

$$\forall y(A[X, \underline{u}, y] \leftrightarrow B[X, \underline{u}, y]) \rightarrow (\exists Y \in \text{HYP}(X)) \forall y(y \in Y \leftrightarrow A[X, \underline{u}, y]) .$$

Corollary 5.1. Suppose that  $A[X, Y, \underline{u}]$  is a  $\Sigma_1^1$  formula. Then

$$\text{ATR}_0 \vdash \exists ! Y A[X, Y, \underline{u}] \rightarrow (\exists Y \in \text{HYP}(X)) A[X, Y, \underline{u}] .$$

Proof. We work in  $\text{ATR}_0$  and assume  $\exists ! Y A[X, Y, \underline{u}]$ . Then we have for all  $k$  that

$$\exists Y(A[X, Y, \underline{u}] \& k \in Y) \leftrightarrow \forall Y(A[X, Y, \underline{u}] \rightarrow k \in Y) .$$

Therefore the set  $Z := \{y : \exists Y(A[X, Y, \underline{u}] \& y \in Y)\}$  is an element of  $\text{HYP}(X)$  by Suslin-Kleene.  $\therefore$

Now we come back to the relations  $\tilde{\in}$ ,  $\approx$  and REP introduced in section 1.6. We use Corollary 5.1 to show that  $\tilde{\in}$  and  $\approx$  are  $\Delta_1^1$  on the class of representation trees.

Corollary 5.2. There exist  $\Sigma_1^1$  formulas  $A_0[X, Y]$ ,  $A_1[X, Y]$  and  $\Pi_1^1$  formulas  $B_0[X, Y]$ ,  $B_1[X, Y]$  such that  $\text{ATR}_0$  proves:

(a)  $\text{REP}(S) \ \& \ \text{REP}(T) \rightarrow (S \tilde{\in} T \leftrightarrow A_0[S, T])$ ;

(b)  $\text{REP}(S) \ \& \ \text{REP}(T) \rightarrow (S \tilde{\in} T \leftrightarrow B_0[S, T])$ ;

(c)  $\text{REP}(S) \ \& \ \text{REP}(T) \rightarrow (S \approx T \leftrightarrow A_1[S, T])$ ;

(d)  $\text{REP}(S) \ \& \ \text{REP}(T) \rightarrow (S \approx T \leftrightarrow B_1[S, T])$ .

Proof. We show (a) and (b), the proofs of (c) and (d) are similar. Define

(1)  $A'[X, Y] : \Leftrightarrow \exists x(\langle 2x \rangle \in Y \ \& \ X \approx Y_{\langle 2x \rangle})$ ,

(2)  $B'[X, Y] : \Leftrightarrow (\exists f \in \text{HYP}(X \dot{\cup} Y)) \exists x(\langle 2x \rangle \in Y \ \& \ f : X \approx Y_{\langle 2x \rangle})$

and choose  $A_0[X, Y]$  and  $B_0[X, Y]$  to be  $\Sigma_1^1$  and  $\Pi_1^1$  formulas provably (in  $\text{ATR}_0$ ) equivalent to  $A'[X, Y]$  and  $B'[X, Y]$ , respectively;  $\dot{\cup}$  is the symbol for the disjoint union of two sets. From the definition of  $\tilde{\in}$  and Lemma 1.6(d) we conclude:

(3)  $\text{ATR}_0 \vdash \text{REP}(S) \ \& \ \text{REP}(T) \rightarrow (S \tilde{\in} T \leftrightarrow A_0[S, T])$ ,

(4)  $\text{ATR}_0 \vdash \text{REP}(S) \ \& \ \text{REP}(T) \rightarrow (B_0[S, T] \rightarrow S \tilde{\in} T)$ ,

(5)  $\text{ATR}_0 \vdash \text{REP}(S) \ \& \ \text{REP}(T) \ \& \ S \tilde{\in} T \rightarrow$   
 $\exists! f \exists x(\langle 2x \rangle \in T \ \& \ f : S \approx T_{\langle 2x \rangle})$ .

Now Corollary 5.1 can be applied to give

(6)  $\text{ATR}_0 \vdash \text{REP}(S) \ \& \ \text{REP}(T) \rightarrow (S \tilde{\in} T \rightarrow B_0[S, T])$ .

Then (a) and (b) follow from (3), (4), (6).  $\therefore$

Lemma 5.5. The following is provable in  $\text{ATR}_0$ . Let  $T$  be a special tree in  $\text{HYP}(X)$  with the property

$$\forall x(\langle 2x \rangle \in T \rightarrow \text{REP}(T_{\langle 2x \rangle})).$$

Then there exists a representation tree  $T'$  in  $\text{HYP}(X)$  such that for all representation trees  $S$

$$S \in T' \leftrightarrow S \in T.$$

Proof. If  $T$  is an  $N$ -tree, then take  $T' = T$ ; otherwise define:

$$(1) B(u) : \Leftrightarrow \langle 2u \rangle \in T \& \forall y(\langle 2y \rangle \in T \& y <_N u \rightarrow T_{\langle 2y \rangle} \neq T_{\langle 2u \rangle}),$$

$$(2) T' := \{\langle \rangle\} \cup \{\langle 2x \rangle * t : B(x) \& t \in T_{\langle 2x \rangle}\}.$$

$T'$  is an element of  $\text{HYP}(X)$  by Corollary 5.2 and Theorem 5.1.

It is easy to check that  $T'$  is a representation tree and

$S \in T' \leftrightarrow S \in T$  for all representation trees  $S$ .  $\therefore$

Theorem 5.2. Let  $A(X, Y, u)$  be a  $\Pi^1_1$  formula with just the free set variables  $X, Y$  and possibly additional number variables.

Then  $\text{ATR}_0$  proves

$$\forall x(\exists Y \in \text{HYP}(X))A(X, Y, x) \rightarrow (\exists Z \in \text{HYP}(X))\forall x A(X, (Z)_x, x).$$

Proof. Reasoning in  $\text{ATR}_0$ , assume that

$$(1) \forall x(\exists Y \in \text{HYP}(X))A(X, Y, x)$$

and define  $B(u, v, X)$  to be a  $\Pi^1_1$  formula provably equivalent to

$$\exists e \exists k[v = \langle e, k \rangle \& e \in 0^X \& \text{Tot}^X(k) \&$$

$$\forall Y \forall Z[H(X, Z, e) \& Y = (k; (Z)_e) \rightarrow A(X, Y, u))]$$

From (1) we obtain  $\forall x \exists y B(x, y, X)$ . Then by Lemma 5.2 we can find a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $B'(u, v, X)$  such that

$$(2) \forall x \forall y (B'(x, y, X) \rightarrow B(x, y, X)) .$$

$$(3) \forall x \exists ! y B'(x, y, X) .$$

The next step is to define two formulas  $C_0(u, v, X)$  and  $C_1(u, v, X)$  as follows

$$(4) C_0(u, v, X) : \iff \exists y \exists e \exists k [B'(u, y, X) \ \& \ y = \langle e, k \rangle \ \& \ \forall Y \forall Z (H(X, Z, e) \ \& \ Y = (k, (Z)_e) \rightarrow v \in Y)] ;$$

$$(5) C_1(u, v, X) : \iff \forall y \forall e \forall k [B'(u, y, X) \ \& \ y = \langle e, k \rangle \rightarrow \exists Y \exists Z (H(X, Z, e) \ \& \ Y = (k, (Z)_e) \ \& \ v \in Y)]$$

From (2), (3) and Lemma 5.3 we conclude

$$(6) \forall x \forall z [C_0(x, z, X) \leftrightarrow C_1(x, z, X)] .$$

Since  $C_0(u, v, X)$  is equivalent to a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula and  $C_1(u, v, X)$  to a  $\Sigma_1^1$  formula, we can apply the Suslin-Kleene theorem to find a set  $Z \in \text{HYP}(X)$  such that  $Z = \{\langle z, x \rangle : C_0(x, z, X)\}$ . It is clear that  $\forall x A(X, (Z)_x, x)$ .  $\therefore$

Our next goal is to show that the hyperarithmetic representation trees determine a model of  $KPU^r$ . The strategy is clear: Sets are represented by hyperarithmetic representation trees, the membership relation  $\in$  is interpreted by  $\tilde{\in}$  and the remaining symbols are translated according to the following definition.

Definition.

- (a)  $\tilde{N} := \{\langle \rangle\} \cup \{t : \exists x(t = \langle 2x \rangle \vee t = \langle 2x, 2x+1 \rangle)\}$  ;
- (b)  $U(X, Y) : \Leftrightarrow \text{REP}(Y) \wedge \text{HYP}(X, Y)$  ;
- (c)  $\tilde{S}(X) : \Leftrightarrow \forall x(x \neq [x])$  ;
- (d)  $\tilde{R}(X) : \Leftrightarrow 0 =_N 1$  ;
- (e)  $\tilde{J}(x_1, \dots, x_n) : \Leftrightarrow \exists x_1 \dots \exists x_n (x_1 = [x_1] \wedge \dots \wedge x_n = [x_n] \wedge J(x_1, \dots, x_n))$ ,

if  $J$  is a relation symbol of the language  $L_1$  different from  $R$ .  
We often write  $Y \in U(X)$  instead of  $U(X, Y)$ .

Definition of  $\tilde{a}$  for every term  $a$  of  $L_*$ .

$$\tilde{a} := \begin{cases} [n], & \text{if } a \text{ is the number constant } n; \\ \tilde{N}, & \text{if } a \text{ is the constant } N; \\ X, & \text{if } a \text{ is the variable } x. \end{cases}$$

Inductive definition of  $A^{U(V)}$  for every  $L_*$  formula  $A$ .

1.  $(a \in b)^{U(V)} := (\tilde{a} \in \tilde{b})$ ;  $S(a)^{U(V)} := \tilde{S}(\tilde{a})$ ;  $J(a_1, \dots, a_n)^{U(V)} := \tilde{J}(\tilde{a}_1, \dots, \tilde{a}_n)$ , if  $J$  is a relation symbol of  $L_1$ .
2.  $(\neg A)^{U(V)} := \neg A^{U(V)}$  for every atomic formula  $A$ .
3.  $(A \wedge B)^{U(V)} := A^{U(V)} \wedge B^{U(V)}$ ;  $(A \vee B)^{U(V)} := A^{U(V)} \vee B^{U(V)}$ .
4.  $(\forall x \in a)A(x)^{U(V)} := \forall x[\langle 2x \rangle \in \tilde{a} \wedge A^{U(V)}(\tilde{a}_{\langle 2x \rangle})]$ ;  
 $(\exists x \in a)A(x)^{U(V)} := \exists x[\langle 2x \rangle \in \tilde{a} \wedge A^{U(V)}(\tilde{a}_{\langle 2x \rangle})]$ .
5.  $\forall x A(x)^{U(V)} := (\forall X \in U(V))A^{U(V)}(X)$ ;  
 $\exists x A(x)^{U(V)} := (\exists X \in U(V))A^{U(V)}(X)$ .

Remark. It is clear from Corollary 5.2 that the translation  $A^{U(V)}$  of a  $\Delta_0$  formula  $A$  of  $L_*$  is  $\Delta_1^1$  on the class  $U(V)$ . More precisely: With any  $\Delta_0$  formula  $A[\underline{x}]$  of  $L_*$  we can associate a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $A_1[\underline{x}]$  and a  $\Sigma_1^1$  formula  $A_2[\underline{x}]$  such that  $ATR_o$  proves for  $i = 1, 2$

$$\underline{x} \in U(V) \rightarrow (A^{U(V)}[\underline{x}] \leftrightarrow A_i[\underline{x}]) .$$

Theorem 5.3. Let  $A[\underline{x}]$  be an axiom of  $KPU^T$ . Then  $ATR_o$  proves

$$\underline{x} \in U(V) \rightarrow A^{U(V)}[\underline{x}] .$$

Proof. 1. If  $A[\underline{x}]$  is an equality axiom, then the conclusion follows by Lemma 1.6 and Lemma 5.1; if  $A[\underline{x}]$  is an ontological or number-theoretic axiom, then the conclusion is trivially satisfied.

2. Now we check the set-theoretic axioms of  $KPU^T$ .

2.1. (Pair) and (Transitive Hull). For  $S_0, S_1 \in U(V)$  we define

$$(1) T_0 := \{\langle \rangle\} \cup \{\langle 0, t \rangle : t \in S_0\} \cup \{\langle 2, t \rangle : t \in S_1\} ,$$

$$(2) T_1 := \{\langle \rangle\} \cup \{\langle 2s \rangle * t : s * t \in S_0\} .$$

$T_0$  and  $T_1$  are special trees in  $U(V)$  which satisfy

$$(3) S_0 \tilde{\in} T_0 \& S_1 \tilde{\in} T_0 ,$$

$$(4) (\forall x \tilde{\in} S_0)(x \tilde{\in} T_1) \& (\forall x \tilde{\in} T_1)(\forall y \tilde{\in} x)(y \tilde{\in} T_1) .$$

Hence, by Lemma 5.5, there are trees  $T'_0, T'_1 \in U(V)$  which are witnesses for (Pair) and (Transitive Hull).

2.2. ( $\Delta_0$ -Sep). Suppose that  $\underline{S}, \underline{T}$  are elements of  $U(V)$  and

$A[\underline{x}, \underline{y}]$  is a  $\Delta_0$  formula of  $L_*$ . By Theorem 5.1 and the remark above the set

$$(5) X := \{\langle \rangle\} \cup \{\langle 2x \rangle * t : \langle 2x \rangle * t \in T \ \& \ A^{\mathcal{U}(V)}[\underline{s}, T_{\langle 2x \rangle}] \}$$

is a special tree in  $HYP(V)$ . It follows that

$$(6) \forall Y (Y \in X \leftrightarrow Y \in T \ \& \ A^{\mathcal{U}(V)}[\underline{s}, Y]) .$$

We apply Lemma 5.5 in order to find a copy of  $X$  in  $\mathcal{U}(V)$ .

2.3. ( $\Delta_0$ -Col). Suppose again that  $\underline{s}, T$  are elements of  $\mathcal{U}(V)$  and  $A[\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{z}]$  is a  $\Delta_0$  formula of  $L_*$ . Assume also that

$$(7) (\forall X \in T)(\exists Y \in \mathcal{U}(V))A^{\mathcal{U}(V)}[\underline{s}, X, Y] .$$

This is equivalent to

$$(8) \forall x (\exists Y \in HYP(V)) [\langle 2x \rangle \in T \rightarrow (\text{REP}(Y) \ \& \ A^{\mathcal{U}(V)}[\underline{s}, T_{\langle 2x \rangle}, Y])] .$$

The formula within the square brackets is provably equivalent to a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula. Therefore we can apply Theorem 5.2 in order to find a set  $Z \in HYP(V)$  such that

$$(9) \forall x [\langle 2x \rangle \in T \rightarrow (\text{REP}((Z)_x) \ \& \ A^{\mathcal{U}(V)}[\underline{s}, T_{\langle 2x \rangle}, (Z)_x])].$$

Hence  $HYP(V)$  contains the special tree

$$(10) Z' := \{\langle \rangle\} \cup \{\langle 2x \rangle * t : \langle 2x \rangle \in T \ \& \ t \in (Z)_x\}$$

and Lemma 5.5 gives a set  $Z'' \in \mathcal{U}(V)$  such that

$$(11) (\forall X \in T)(\exists Y \in Z'') A^{\mathcal{U}(V)}[\underline{s}, X, Y] .$$

This completes the interpretation of the set-theoretic axioms of  $KP^r$  in  $ATR_0$ .

3. Induction axioms. The translation of  $(I_\infty)$  is provable in  $\text{ATR}_0$  since representation trees are well-founded. The translation of  $(I_N)$  is trivially provable.  $\therefore$

Corollary 5.3. We have for every sentence  $A$  of  $L_*$ :

$$\text{KP}^U \vdash A \iff \text{ATR}_0 \vdash A^{U(V)} .$$

## §6. $\Gamma_0$ REVISITED.

The ordinal  $\Gamma_0$  has gained some importance in the foundations of mathematics as being the ordinal generally associated with theories which formalize the predicative part of mathematics.

The notion of predicativity goes back to Poincaré who objects to the Platonistic conception of set. Following his standpoint, only the natural numbers with the unlimited principle of complete induction can be regarded as given. Sets do not exist a priori but have to be introduced by carefully chosen definitions. In order to avoid a vicious circle in the definition  $\forall x(x \in a \leftrightarrow A(x))$  of a set  $a$ , we have to require that the meaning of the formula  $A$  does not refer to a totality where  $a$  might belong to. Typical predicative sets are all sets  $a = \{x \in N : N \models A(x)\}$  with  $A \Pi^1_0$ ; sets of the form  $b = \{x \in N : \text{Pow}(N) \models B(x)\}$ , where  $B$  is a  $\Pi^1_1$  formula, are *prima facie* impredicative.

Russell's ramified theory of types was the first attempt to formalize predicative reasoning. Later Feferman, Kreisel and Schütte were able to characterize *predicativity* in the framework of second order arithmetic. It was shown by Feferman and Schütte that  $\Gamma_0$  is the proof-theoretic ordinal of predicative analysis.

In this section we will survey some known approaches to *predicativity* and establish connections to theories of

ordinal  $\Gamma_0$  introduced so far. For a detailed discussion of the philosophical background and the classical mathematical realization of predicativity we suggest Feferman [8,14], Kreisel [38] and Schütte [47].

#### 6.1. Autonomous iterations.

The original examples in this direction are autonomous progressions of ramified systems à la Feferman, Kreisel and Schütte [8,36,47] and autonomous progressions of theories according to Feferman and Turing [7,59] based on reflection principles. Here we present an approach in the same vein fitting precisely into our framework.

We consider a natural process of iteration of  $\Pi_0^1$  comprehension. If  $\alpha$  is a countable ordinal, we write  $(\Pi_0^1\text{-CA})_{<\alpha}$  for elementary analysis EA together with the axioms

$$\forall X \exists Y H_B(X, Y, Q) \quad \text{and} \quad TI(Q, A)$$

for all primitive recursive well-orderings  $Q$  of order-type  $< \alpha$ , all arithmetic formulas  $B[X, Y, u]$  and all  $L_2$  formulas  $A$ .

The theories  $(\Pi_0^1\text{-CA})_{<\alpha}$  are predicative modulo well-orderings of order-type less than  $\alpha$ , whereas the property of being a well-ordering is impredicative. The set Aut of  $\Pi_0^1$ -autonomous or predicative ordinals is generated by

(i)  $0 \in \text{Aut}$ ;

(ii) if  $\beta \in \text{Aut}$  and  $\alpha$  is provable in  $(\Pi_0^1\text{-CA})_{<\beta}$ , then  $\alpha \in \text{Aut}$ .

From now on we consider  $(\Pi_0^1\text{-CA})_{<\Gamma_0}$  as the theory which formalizes predicative reasoning in terms of second order arithmetic. This is justified by the following famous result of Feferman [8] and Schütte [46].

Theorem 6.1.  $\Gamma_0 = \min\{\xi : \xi \notin \text{Aut}\} = \min\{\xi : \xi = |(\Pi_0^1\text{-CA})_{<\xi}| \}$ .

#### 6.2. The bar rule and systems of ordinal $\Gamma_0$ .

In order to improve the formalism, we introduce a new theory  $\text{AUT}(\Pi_0^1)$  which is equivalent to  $(\Pi_0^1\text{-CA})_{<\Gamma_0}$  and avoids the direct reference to the set  $\text{Aut}$  and the ordinal  $\Gamma_0$ . The first example of a theory with these characteristics is the system IR introduced in Feferman [8]. It will be described below. By the bar rule (BR) we understand the following rule of inference

$$(BR) \quad \frac{WF(Q)}{TI(Q, A)}$$

for all binary primitive recursive relations  $Q$  and all formulas  $A$ . In addition to elementary analysis EA and the bar rule (BR),  $\text{AUT}(\Pi_0^1)$  uses the rule of inference

$$\frac{WF(Q)}{\forall X \exists Y H_B(X, Y, Q)}$$

for every binary primitive recursive relation  $Q$  and every  $\Pi_0^1$  formula  $B[X, Y, u]$ . The system IR of [8] is just  $\text{AUT}(\Pi_0^1) + (\Delta_1^1 \text{ comprehension rule})$ . IR can be shown to prove the same

$\Pi_2^1$  sentences as  $\text{AUT}(\Pi_0^1)$ . The following Lemma 6.1 is a trivial consequence of Theorem 6.1.

Lemma 6.1.

(a)  $\text{AUT}(\Pi_0^1) \equiv (\Pi_0^1\text{-CA})_{<\Gamma_0}$ .

(b)  $|\text{AUT}(\Pi_0^1)| = \Gamma_0$ .

Feferman [11] describes a subsystem  $PS_1$  of set theory which is a conservative extension of IR. The minimal standard model of  $\text{AUT}(\Pi_0^1)$  and IR is the set  $L_{\Gamma_0} \cap \text{Pow}(N)$ , the minimal standard model of  $PS_1$  is  $L_{\Gamma_0}$ ; therefore these theories have predicative interpretations.

It is a well known result due to Kreisel that the minimal standard model of  $(\Sigma_1^1\text{-AC})$  and  $(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA})$  is the collection of all hyperarithmetic sets  $HYP = L_{\Omega_1} \cap \text{Pow}(N)$ ; the same holds directly for the extensions of these systems by BR, and hence the resulting theories have no standard predicative interpretations. Nevertheless it follows from Feferman [14] and Feferman-Jäger [19] that both theories are reducible to predicative mathematics

Lemma 6.2.

(a)  $(\Sigma_1^1\text{-AC}) + (\text{BR})$  and  $(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BR})$  are conservative extensions of  $\text{AUT}(\Pi_0^1)$  for  $\Pi_2^1$  sentences.

(b)  $|(\Sigma_1^1\text{-AC}) + (\text{BR})| = |(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BR})| = \Gamma_0$ .

The corresponding systems in the framework of admissible sets are the theories  $KPU^0 + (\text{BR})$  and  $KPU^r + (\text{BR})$ . By Corollary

3.1, which implies  $(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BR}) \subset \text{KPU}^0 + (\text{BR})$ , and Lemmas 6.9, 6.10 below we obtain that  $(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BR})$  and  $\text{KPU}^0 + (\text{BR})$  prove the same  $\Pi_1^1$  sentences. With some extra work this result can be extended to  $\text{KPU}^\Gamma + (\text{BR})$  (proof not given here).

Lemma 6.3.

- (a)  $\text{KPU}^\Gamma + (\text{BR})$ ,  $\text{KPU}^0 + (\text{BR})$  and  $(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BR})$  prove the same  $\Pi_1^1$  sentences.
- (b)  $|\text{KPU}^\Gamma + (\text{BR})| = |\text{KPU}^0 + (\text{BR})| = |(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BR})| = \Gamma_0$ .

6.3. Martin-Löf's intuitionistic theory of finite types.

Martin-Löf [41] is concerned with constructivity rather than predicativity. His intuitionistic theory of finite types, here denoted FT, is 'intended to be a full scale system for formalizing intuitionistic mathematics as developed, for example, in the book by Bishop [2]' (quoted from the introduction of [41]).

Feferman [16] establishes the connections between FT and the iterated inductive fixed point theory  $\bigcup_{n<\omega} \hat{\text{ID}}_n$ . The paper [16] also contains a proof of the following result which may be compared with Theorem 4.4.

Lemma 6.4.  $|\text{FT}| = \left| \bigcup_{n<\omega} \hat{\text{ID}}_n \right| = \Gamma_0$ .

6.4. The theory  $\text{ATR}_0$ .

Friedman's theory  $\text{ATR}_0$  is one of the five fundamental

systems of the Friedman-Simpson program of Reverse Mathematics, a program which is guided by the question: which set existence axioms are needed to prove the theorems of ordinary mathematics?

It can be shown that  $\text{ATR}_0$  is just strong enough to prove a series of well-known results in classical descriptive set theory (cf. [25]). Over  $\text{EA}_0$ , the principle (ATR) is equivalent to:

- (i) comparability of well-orderings;
- (ii) every uncountable closed set of reals has a perfect subset;
- (iii) every uncountable analytic set of reals has a perfect subset;
- (iv) every clopen (open) game in  $\omega^\omega$  is determined.

Prima facie,  $\text{ATR}_0$  has nothing to do with predicative mathematics and it seems questionable whether a direct predicative justification of the principle (ATR) is possible. Nevertheless it follows from [25] or Corollary 4.6 that the proof-theoretic ordinal of  $\text{ATR}_0$  is  $\Gamma_0$ .

Lemma 6.5.

- (a)  $\text{ATR}_0$  proves the same  $\Pi^1_1$  sentences as  $\text{AUT}(\Pi^1_0)$ .
- (b)  $|\text{ATR}_0| = \Gamma_0$ .

### 6.5. The theory KP<sup>0</sup>.

The results concerning theories for admissible sets without foundation are spread over section 4. Among other things we have considered there the role of the axiom  $\beta$  and proved the following two lemmas:

#### Lemma 6.6.

$$(a) ES^0 + (\text{Axiom } \beta) \subset KP^0 + (\text{Axiom } \beta) \subset KP^0.$$

$$(b) ES^r + (\text{Axiom } \beta) \subset ES^r + (\text{Axiom } \beta).$$

Lemma 6.7. For every sentence  $A$  of  $L_2$  we have:

$$ES^r + (\text{Axiom } \beta) \vdash A \implies KP^0 \vdash A.$$

The next lemma is a consequence of statement (i) in the previous section and of the remark subsequent to Theorem 4.7.

Lemma 6.8.  $ATR_0 \subset ES^0 + (\text{Axiom } \beta).$

Remark. In Simpson [52] a set-theoretic version  $ATR_0^S$  of  $ATR_0$  is presented.  $ATR_0^S$  is formulated in the language of ZF without urelements and is a conservative extension of  $ATR_0$ . It is easy to see that  $ATR_0^S$  corresponds to our theory  $ES^r + (\text{Axiom } \beta)$  where the set of urelements is interpreted by  $\omega$ .

Now we turn to the relations between  $KP^0 + (BR)$  and  $KP^0$ . Both are theories of ordinal  $\Gamma_0$  but they formalize completely different universes. It is interesting to see how the admissibles in  $KP^0$  are used in order to reduce  $KP^0 + (BR)$  to  $KP^0$ .

The following lemma is proved by induction on the length of derivations in  $KPu^0 + (BR)$ .

Lemma 6.9. If  $A$  is a formula of  $L_*$ , then

$$KPu^0 + (BR) \vdash A \implies KPi^0 \vdash \forall x(\text{Ad}(x) \rightarrow A^x).$$

Fortunately, section 4 also provides a predicative justification of  $KPi^0$ , at least in a liberal sense.

Lemma 6.10.

(a)  $KPi^0$  is a conservative extension of  $\text{AUT}(\Pi_0^1)$  for  $\Pi_1^1$  sentences.

(b)  $|KPi^0| = \Gamma_0$ .

(c) We have for every  $\Pi_2$  sentence  $A$  of  $L_*$ :

$$KPi^0 \vdash \forall x(\text{Ad}(x) \rightarrow A^x) \implies L_{\Gamma_0} \vDash A.$$

The assertions (b) and (c) are proved in section 4; (a) follows from (b) and Lemma 6.1 by standard proof-theoretic techniques.

#### 6.6. The reflective closure of a theory.

A few years ago Feferman developed the general concepts of reflective closure and schematic theory. Applied to PA, the reflective closure considered as a schematic theory gives a theory  $PA[P]^2$  of proof-theoretic strength  $\Gamma_0$ . We claim that  $PA[P]^2$  can be reduced to  $KPi^0$  easily. A proof of this claim and a formal definition of  $PA[P]^2$  are not included here. We

refer to Feferman [17] for a detailed discussion of the general notion of reflective closure of a schematic theory  $S$  and the special case  $S = PA$ .

#### 6.7. Summary.

The previous considerations support the thesis that  $KPi^0$  is the 'strongest' theory of predicative strength. We strongly believe that any reasonable theory of proof-theoretic strength  $\leq \Gamma_0$  can be reduced to  $KPi^0$  in a very natural way.

To conclude, a listing is provided of the most important theories of proof-theoretic strength  $\Gamma_0$ . The theory  $\bigcup_{n<\omega} ID_n^*$  mentioned below was introduced by Friedman and is studied in Cantini [6] in detail.

#### Theorem 6.2.

(a) The following subsystems of analysis and set theory prove the same  $\Pi_1^1$  sentences and have proof-theoretic ordinal  $\Gamma_0$ :

A. Subsystems of analysis.  $AUT(\Pi_0^1)$ ,  $IR$ ,  $(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA}) + (BR)$ ,  $(\Sigma_1^1\text{-AC}) + (BR)$ ,  $ATR_0$ ;

B. Subsystems of set theory.  $PS_1$ ,  $KPu^0 + (BR)$ ,  $KPu^{\Gamma} + (BR)$ ,  $ES^0 + (\text{Axiom } \beta)$ ,  $ES^{\Gamma} + (\text{Axiom } \beta)$ ,  $KPu^0 + (\text{Axiom } \beta)$ ,  $KPl^0$ ,  $KPi^0$ .

(b)  $FT$ ,  $\bigcup_{n<\omega} ID_n$ ,  $\bigcup_{n<\omega} ID_n^*$  and  $PA[P]^Q$  are further theories of proof-theoretic strength  $\Gamma_0$ .

## §7. $\Pi_1^1$ COMPREHENSION, (Lim) AND ( $I_{\in}$ ).

The remainder of this Habilitationsschrift is devoted to impredicative subsystems of set theory and analysis. We begin with establishing connections between the principle of  $\Pi_1^1$  comprehension and the set-theoretic axioms (Lim) and ( $I_{\in}$ ).

The set theories  $KP1^r$  and  $KP1$  are formulated in the language  $L_{Ad}$ .  $KP1^r$  is  $ES^r + (\text{Lim})$  or, put in other terms,  $KP1^0 + (I_{\in})$ .  $KP1$  is  $KP1^r + (\text{IND}_N) + (\text{IND}_{\in})$ . By  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_o$  we denote the second order theory  $EA_o$  plus the scheme of  $\Pi_1^1$  comprehension

$$(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA}) \exists Z \forall x(x \in Z \leftrightarrow A(x))$$

for all  $\Pi_1^1$  formulas  $A(u)$  of  $L_2$ . The second order theory  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})$  is  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_o + (\text{IND}_N)$ , i.e.  $EA + \Pi_1^1$  comprehension. The classical version of bar induction is given by the scheme

$$(\text{BI}) \forall Z(\text{WF}(Z) \rightarrow \text{TI}(Z, A))$$

for arbitrary  $L_2$  formulas  $A(u)$ .  $EA + (\text{BI})$  is an interesting subsystem of analysis which is proof-theoretically equivalent to  $ID_1$ . We will not say more about this system here; the mathematical and foundational significance of (BI) is discussed in Feferman [13] and Kreisel [37].

### Theorem 7.1 (Quantifier theorem).

(a) For every  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $A[x, Y]$  of  $L_2$  there exists a  $\Delta_o$  formula  $A_{\Delta}[d, x, y]$  of  $L_*$  such that  $KP1^r$  proves

$$\text{Ad}(d) \& x \in N \& y \subset N \& y \in d \rightarrow (A[x, y] \leftrightarrow A_{\Delta}[d, x, y]) .$$

(b) For every  $\Sigma_2^1$  formula  $B[x, Y]$  of  $L_2$  there exists a  $\Sigma_1$  formula  $B_\Sigma[x, y]$  of  $L_{Ad}$  such that  $KP1^F$  proves

$$x \in N \ \& \ y \in N \rightarrow (B[x, y] \leftrightarrow B_\Sigma[x, y]) .$$

Proof. (a) Let  $A[x, Y]$  be a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula of  $L_2$ . By standard recursion-theoretic arguments we find a binary relation  $\mathcal{Q}_{x, Y}$  with parameters  $x$  and  $Y$ , defined by the arithmetic formula  $Q[u, v, x, Y]$ , such that

$$(1) \ KP1^F \vdash x \in N \ \& \ y \in N \rightarrow (A[x, y] \leftrightarrow Wf(N, \mathcal{Q}_{x, y})) .$$

Next, using Theorem 4.6 and  $(I_\in)$ , we obtain

$$(2) \ KP1^F \vdash Ad(d) \ \& \ x \in N \ \& \ y \in N \ \& \ y \in d \rightarrow (Wf(N, \mathcal{Q}_{x, y}) \leftrightarrow A_\Delta[d, x, y])$$

for  $A_\Delta[d, x, y]$  being the  $\Delta_0$  formula

$$(3) \ A_\Delta[d, x, y] : \Leftrightarrow (\exists f \in d)(f \text{ collapsing function for } (N, \mathcal{Q}_{x, y})) .$$

Hence the conclusion follows from (1) and (2).

(b) If  $B[x, Y]$  is the  $\Sigma_2^1$  formula  $\exists Z C[x, Y, Z]$ , where  $C$  is  $\Pi_1^1$ , we can, by (a), find a  $\Delta_0$  formula  $C_\Delta[d, x, y, z]$  corresponding to  $C$ . By (Lim) and (a) the claim follows for the  $\Sigma_1$  formula  $B_\Sigma[x, y]$ ,

$$(4) \ B_\Sigma[x, y] : \Leftrightarrow \exists d(Ad(d) \ \& \ y \in d \ \& \ (\exists z \in d)(z \in N \ \& \ C_\Delta[d, x, y, z])) . . .$$

Remark. This theorem is called quantifier theorem since it proves the equivalence of  $\Sigma_2^1$  predicates of analysis with  $\Sigma_1$

predicates of set theory. Hence the number of unrestricted quantifiers is lowered by one.

The essential step in the preceding argument is the reduction of the well-foundedness of a relation on  $N$ , a  $\Pi_1^1$  statement, to the well-foundedness of the  $\in$ -relation, which is given axiomatically. We now apply the quantifier theorem in order to prove  $\Pi_1^1$  comprehension in  $KP1^r$ .

Corollary 7.1. If  $A[u, v, Y]$  is a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula of  $L_2$ , then

$$KP1^r \vdash v \in N \ \& \ y \subset N \rightarrow \exists z(z = \{x \in N : A[x, v, y]\}).$$

Proof. Choose a  $\Delta_0$  formula  $A_\Delta[d, u, v, y]$  according to Theorem 7.1(a). Given  $y \subset N$ , we find an admissible  $d$  which contains  $y$  and define by  $\Delta_0$  separation in  $d$

$$z = \{x \in N : A_\Delta[d, x, v, y]\} = \{x \in N : A[x, v, y]\}. \quad ./.$$

Lemma 7.1.  $KP1$  proves bar induction (BI).

Proof. Let  $A(u)$  be an arbitrary formula. We assume  $WF(z)$  for a  $z \subset N$  and show  $TI(z, A)$  by arguing in  $KP1$ . Using  $\Delta_0$  separation, we define the set

$$(1) \ r := \{(x, y) \in N \times N : <x, y> \in z\}.$$

This implies  $WF(N, r)$ . Since the axiom  $\beta$  is provable in  $KP1$ , there exists a collapsing function  $f$  for  $(N, r)$ :

$$(2) \ dom(f) = N \ \& \ (\forall y \in N)(f(y) = \{f(u) : (u, y) \in r\}).$$

Now take

(3)  $B(x) \Leftrightarrow (\forall y \in N)(f(y) = x \rightarrow A(y))$ .

It is shown by  $(IND_{\in})$ , and here we work in KP1 and not in  $KP1^r$ , that

(4)  $\forall x((\forall y \in x)B(y) \rightarrow B(x)) \rightarrow \forall xB(x)$ .

By the definition of  $B(x)$  this implies  $TI(z, A)$ . ∴.

Theorem 7.2.

- (a)  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_0$  is contained in  $KP1^r$ .
- (b)  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})$  is contained in  $KP1^r + (IND_N)$ .
- (c)  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA}) + (BI)$  is contained in KP1.

This theorem follows from Corollary 7.1 and Lemma 7.1.

It gives one half of the equivalences between the set theories and subsystems of analysis mentioned there. In order to reduce these set theories to theories in  $L_2$ , we will employ the model of representation trees. Two important lemmas about  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_0$  will be used without proof.

Lemma 7.2.

- (a)  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_0$  proves the  $\Sigma_1^1$  axiom of choice.
- (b)  $ATR_0$  is contained in  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_0$ .

Lemma 7.3 ( $\Pi_1^1$  uniformization). For every  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $A[\underline{X}, Y, \underline{u}]$  there exists a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $A'[\underline{X}, Y, \underline{u}]$  such that  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_0$  proves:

- (a)  $\forall Y(A'[\underline{X}, Y, \underline{u}] \rightarrow A[\underline{X}, Y, \underline{u}])$ ;
- (b)  $\exists Y A[\underline{X}, Y, \underline{u}] \rightarrow \exists! Y A'[\underline{X}, Y, \underline{u}]$ .

Lemma 7.3 is a recent result of Simpson [53] where he proves that, over  $\text{ATR}_0$ ,  $\Pi_1^1$  uniformization is equivalent to  $\Pi_1^1$  comprehension. Part (a) of Lemma 7.2 is standard; cf. e.g. Feferman [18], Simpson [53] and Tait [55]. By (a) it is easy to show that  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_0$  contains  $\text{ATR}_0$ . Set parameters are allowed in the  $\Pi_1^1$  comprehension scheme; therefore  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_0$  proves comprehension for formulas arithmetic in  $\Pi_1^1$ .

Inductive definition of the class of  $\Pi_0^1\text{-}\Pi_1^1$  formulas.

1. If  $A$  is a  $\Sigma_1^1$  or  $\Pi_1^1$  formula, then  $A$  is a  $\Pi_0^1\text{-}\Pi_1^1$  formula.
2. If  $A$  and  $B$  are  $\Pi_0^1\text{-}\Pi_1^1$  formulas, then  $(A \& B)$  and  $(A \vee B)$  are  $\Pi_0^1\text{-}\Pi_1^1$  formulas.
3. If  $A(u)$  is a  $\Pi_0^1\text{-}\Pi_1^1$  formula, then  $\forall x A(x)$  and  $\exists x A(x)$  are  $\Pi_0^1\text{-}\Pi_1^1$  formulas.

Lemma 7.4 ( $\Pi_0^1\text{-}\Pi_1^1$  comprehension). If  $A(u)$  is a  $\Pi_0^1\text{-}\Pi_1^1$  formula, then  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_0$  proves

$$\exists Z \forall x (x \in Z \leftrightarrow A(x)).$$

The translation of  $L_{\text{Ad}}$  into  $L_2$  is an extension of the translation in section 5. In order to find an interpretation of the additional relation symbol  $\text{Ad}$ , we call a representation tree an admissible representation tree if it codes a model of  $\text{KPU}^0$  in the sense explained below. First we define the  $L_2$  formula  $A^{(T)}$  for every  $L_*$  formula  $A$  and special tree  $T$ . This definition is basically the definition of  $A^{U(V)}$  in §5 with  $U(V)$  replaced by  $\{T_t : t \in T\}$ .

Inductive definition of  $A^{(T)}$  for every  $L_*$  formula A.

1.  $A^{(T)} := A^{(\emptyset)}$  for every atomic and negated atomic formula of  $L_*$ .
2.  $(A \& B)^{(T)} := A^{(T)} \& B^{(T)}$ ,  $(A \vee B)^{(T)} := A^{(T)} \vee B^{(T)}$ .
3.  $(\forall x \in a)A(x)^{(T)} := \forall x[\langle 2x \rangle \in \tilde{a} \rightarrow A^{(T)}(\tilde{a}_{\langle 2x \rangle})]$ ;  
 $(\exists x \in a)A(x)^{(T)} := \exists x[\langle 2x \rangle \in \tilde{a} \& A^{(T)}(\tilde{a}_{\langle 2x \rangle})]$ .
4.  $\forall x A(x)^{(T)} := \forall t[t \in T \rightarrow A^{(T)}(T_t)]$ ;  
 $\exists x A(x)^{(T)} := \exists t[t \in T \& A^{(T)}(T_t)]$ .

Let  $\text{For}(k)$  ( $\Delta_0$ - $\text{For}(k)$ ) be an arithmetic formula which expresses that  $k$  is the Gödel number of a formula ( $\Delta_0$  formula) of  $L_*$ . Let  $\text{Ax}(k)$  be an arithmetic formula which expresses that  $k$  is the Gödel number of the universal closure of an axiom of  $KPu^0$ . Given a representation tree  $T$ , truth of an  $L_*$  formula according to the definition above is  $\Delta_1^1$  in  $T$ . Following for example Feferman [18], there exist a  $\Pi_1^1$  formula  $\text{Tr}_\Pi(T, t, k)$  and a  $\Sigma_1^1$  formula  $\text{Tr}_\Sigma(T, t, k)$  which express for every representation tree  $T$ : (i)  $k$  is the Gödel number of an  $L_*$  formula with  $\text{lh}(t)$  many free variables; (ii)  $(\forall i < \text{lh}(t))((t)_i \in T)$ ; and (iii) the formula coded by  $k$  is true in  $T$  if its free variables are interpreted by  $T_{(t)_0}, \dots, T_{(t)_{\text{lh}(t)-1}}$ . We may assume that these formulas have been chosen so that the following is provable in  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_0$ :

$$(\text{Tr1}) \text{ REP}(T) \rightarrow (\text{Tr}_\Pi(T, t, k) \leftrightarrow \text{Tr}_\Sigma(T, t, k));$$

$$(\text{Tr2}) \text{ REP}(T) \& \text{REP}(S) \& f : T \approx S \& \text{lh}(t) = \text{lh}(s) \&$$

$$(\forall i < \text{lh}(t))((s)_i = f((t)_i)) \rightarrow (\text{Tr}_\Pi(T, t, k) \leftrightarrow \text{Tr}_\Pi(S, s, k));$$

- (Tr3)  $\Delta_0$ -For( $k$ ) & REP(S) & REP(T) & ( $\forall i < lh(t)$ ) ( $S_{(t)}_i \approx T_{(t)}_i$ )  
 $\rightarrow (Tr_{\Pi}(S, t, k) \leftrightarrow Tr_{\Pi}(T, t, k))$  ;
- (tr4) REP(T) &  $s = \langle t_1, \dots, t_n \rangle$  & ( $\forall i < n$ ) ( $(s)_i \in T$ )  $\rightarrow$   
 $(A^{(T)}[T_{t_1}, \dots, T_{t_n}] \leftrightarrow Tr_{\Pi}(T, s, k))$  ,  
if  $k$  is the Gödel number of the  $L_*$  formula  $A[u_1, \dots, u_n]$ .

Definition. Take  $\tilde{Ad}(T)$  to be the following  $\Pi_0^1 - \Pi_1^1$  formula

$$\tilde{Ad}(T) : \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} REP(T) \wedge \tilde{N} \in T \wedge \forall t(t \in T \rightarrow T_t \in T) \\ \wedge \forall x(Ax(x) \rightarrow Tr_{\Pi}(T, \langle \rangle, x)) . \end{cases}$$

Lemma 7.5. We can prove in  $(\Pi_1^1 - CA)_0$ :

$$(a) \tilde{Ad}(T) \wedge REP(S) \wedge S \approx T \rightarrow \tilde{Ad}(S) ;$$

$$(b) REP(T) \rightarrow \exists S(\tilde{Ad}(S) \wedge T \in S) .$$

Proof. (a) follows from (Tr2) of the truth definition  $Tr_{\Pi}$ .

(b) The sets in  $U(T)$  are coded into a representation tree. Each tree in  $U(T)$  is represented by a pair  $\langle e, k \rangle$  such that  $e \in O^T$  and  $Tot^T(k)$ . So define

$$(1) A(T, e, k, t) : \Leftrightarrow e \in O^T \wedge Tot^T(k) \wedge \forall Y \forall Z[H(T, Z, e) \wedge Y = (k; (Z)_e) \rightarrow REP(Y) \wedge t \in Y] .$$

$A(T, e, k, t)$  is a  $\Pi_0^1 - \Pi_1^1$  formula, hence by  $\Pi_0^1 - \Pi_1^1$  comprehension we can define the tree

$$(2) S := \{\langle \rangle\} \cup \{\langle 2 \cdot \langle e, k \rangle \rangle * t : A(T, e, k, t)\}$$

which has the properties

(3)  $X \in U(T) \rightarrow X \tilde{\in} S$ ,

(4)  $\langle 2n \rangle \in S \rightarrow REP(S_{\langle 2n \rangle}) \& \exists X(X \in U(T) \& X \approx S_{\langle 2n \rangle})$ .

The set  $S'$  defined according to Lemma 5.5 is a representation tree that codes  $U(T)$ ; in particular we have  $T \tilde{\in} S'$ . With essentially the same methods as in the proof of Theorem 5.3 we obtain  $\tilde{Ad}(S')$ .  $\therefore$

Finally we define the translation  $A^{REP}$  of a formula  $A$  of  $L_{Ad}$ . From now on we often write  $X \in REP$  instead of  $REP(X)$ .

Inductive definition of  $A^{REP}$  for every  $L_{Ad}$  formula  $A$ .

1.  $A^{REP} := A^{U(\emptyset)}$  for every atomic and negated atomic formula  $A$  of  $L_*$ .

2.  $Ad(a)^{REP} := \tilde{Ad}(\tilde{a})$ ;  $(\neg Ad(a))^{REP} := \neg \tilde{Ad}(\tilde{a})$ .

3.  $(A \& B)^{REP} := A^{REP} \& B^{REP}$ ;  $(A \vee B)^{REP} := A^{REP} \vee B^{REP}$ .

4.  $(\forall x \in a)A(x)^{REP} := \forall x[\langle 2x \rangle \in \tilde{a} \rightarrow A^{REP}(\tilde{a}_{\langle 2x \rangle})]$ ;

$(\exists x \in a)A(x)^{REP} := \exists x[\langle 2x \rangle \in \tilde{a} \& A^{REP}(\tilde{a}_{\langle 2x \rangle})]$ .

5.  $\forall x A(x)^{REP} := \forall x[X \in REP \rightarrow A^{REP}(X)]$ ;

$\exists x A(x)^{REP} := \exists x[X \in REP \& A^{REP}(X)]$ .

Remark. If  $A$  is a  $\Delta_0$  formula of  $L_{Ad}$ , then  $A^{REP}$  is a  $\Pi_0^1$ - $\Pi_1^1$  formula of  $L_2$ .

Theorem 7.3. Let  $A[\underline{x}]$  be an axiom of  $KP1^r$ . Then  $(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_0$  proves

$$\underline{x} \in REP \rightarrow A^{REP}[\underline{x}]$$

Proof. If  $A[\underline{x}]$  is the axiom (Lim), then the conclusion follows from Lemma 7.5(b); if  $A[\underline{x}]$  is an Ad-axiom, then the conclusion follows from the definition of the predicate  $\tilde{A}$ . Now suppose that  $S, T$  are representation trees and  $A[\underline{x}, \underline{y}]$  is a  $\Delta_0$  formula of  $L_{Ad}$ . By  $\Pi_0^1 - \Pi_1^1$  comprehension we define the set

$$(1) X := \{\langle \rangle \cup \{\langle 2x \rangle * t : \langle 2x \rangle * t \in T \wedge A^{REP}[S, T_{\langle 2x \rangle}]\}\}$$

which is a representation tree such that

$$(2) (\forall Y \in REP)(Y \in X \leftrightarrow Y \in T \wedge A^{REP}[S, Y]).$$

This proves  $\Delta_0$  separation. For the remaining axioms of  $KP1^r$  see the proof of Theorem 5.3.  $\therefore$

Corollary 7.2. We have for every sentence  $A$  of  $L_{Ad}$ :

$$(a) KP1^r \vdash A \implies (\Pi_1^1 - CA)_0 \vdash A^{REP};$$

$$(b) KP1^r + (IND_N) \vdash A \implies (\Pi_1^1 - CA) \vdash A^{REP};$$

$$(c) KP1 \vdash A \implies (\Pi_1^1 - CA) + (BI) \vdash A^{REP}.$$

Proof. (a) and (b) follow from Theorem 7.3. For (c) we have to check that the translation of every instance of  $(IND_\epsilon)$  is provable from (BI). Let  $A(x)$  be an  $L_{Ad}$  formula and assume  $\neg A^{REP}(S)$  for some representation tree  $S$ . The arithmetic relation  $\mathcal{Q}$ ,

$$(1) n \mathcal{Q} m : \iff n \in S \wedge m \in S \wedge m < n,$$

is well-founded since  $S$  is well-founded, and therefore we have by (BI) that

(2)  $\forall x[\forall y(y \notin x \rightarrow B(y)) \rightarrow B(x)] \rightarrow \forall xB(x)$

for all  $L_2$  formulas  $B(x)$ . By choosing  $x \in S + A^{\text{REP}}(S_x)$  as  $B(x)$ , this implies the existence of a  $t \in S$  such that

(3)  $\neg A^{\text{REP}}(S_t) \wedge \forall s(s \notin t \rightarrow A^{\text{REP}}(S_s))$ .

Then  $S_t$  is a representation tree with the property

(4)  $\neg A^{\text{REP}}(S_t) \wedge \forall x(x \in S_t \rightarrow A^{\text{REP}}(x))$ .

So  $(\text{IND}_\infty)$  is proved.  $\therefore$

Theorem 7.2 and Corollary 7.2 settle the relations between subsystems of analysis with  $\Pi_1^1$  comprehension and subsystems of KP1. The ordinal analysis of the theories considered in this section will not be given here. A detailed discussion of this aspect and the connections to theories for iterated inductive definitions can be found in Buchholz-Feferman-Pohlers-Sieg [4] and in Buchholz [3], Feferman [10], Pohlers [43] and Sieg [50]. The ordinal analysis of  $\text{KP1}^r$ ,  $\text{KP1}^r + (\text{IND}_N)$  and KP1 is carried through in Jäger [29]. For completeness we list the proof-theoretic ordinals.

Theorem 7.4.

- (a)  $|\text{KP1}^r| = |(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})_0| = \overline{\Omega}_\omega^0$ .
- (b)  $|\text{KP1}^r + (\text{IND}_N)| = |(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA})| = \overline{\Omega}(\Omega_\omega \cdot \epsilon_0)0$ .
- (c)  $|\text{KP1}| = |(\Pi_1^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})| = \overline{\Omega}\epsilon_{\Omega_\omega + 1}^0$ .

In the rest of this section we study the class of sets provably coded by representation trees. Within  $\text{KP1}^r$  we define

a predicate  $\text{Rep}(d, a, T)$  which expresses that the representation tree  $T$  in the admissible set  $d$  codes the set  $a \in d$ .

Lemma 7.6. There exists a  $\Delta_0$  formula  $\text{Rep}_0(d, a, T)$  such that  $\text{KP}^r$  proves for all admissible sets  $d$ , all sets  $a \in d$  and all special trees  $T \in d$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Rep}_0(d, a, T) \leftrightarrow & (a \in N \ \& \ T = [a]) \vee (a \notin N \ \& \\ & (\forall x \in a)(\exists y \in N)[\langle 2y \rangle \in T \ \& \ \text{Rep}_0(d, x, T_{\langle 2y \rangle})] \ \& \\ & (\forall y \in N)[\langle 2y \rangle \in T \rightarrow (\exists x \in a)\text{Rep}_0(d, x, T_{\langle 2y \rangle})]).\end{aligned}$$

The predicate  $\text{Rep}_0$  is defined by using the second recursion theorem in each admissible set  $d$  according to Lemma 3.6 and Lemma 4.1. The crucial definition, however, is the following:

Definition.  $\text{Rep}(d, a, T) : \Leftrightarrow$

$$\text{Ad}(d) \ \& \ a \in d \ \& \ T \in d \ \& \ \text{REP}(T) \ \& \ \text{Rep}_0(d, a, T) .$$

We call a set  $a$  hereditarily countable in  $d$  if there exists a transitive  $x \supset a$  which is countable in  $d$ . By (Lim)  $a$  is hereditarily countable iff it is hereditarily countable in some  $d$ .

Definition.

- (a)  $\text{Count}(f, a) : \Leftrightarrow \text{Fun}_{1-1}(f) \ \& \ \text{dom}(f) = a \ \& \ \text{rng}(f) \subset N ;$
- (b)  $\text{HC}(d, a) : \Leftrightarrow (\exists x \in d)(\exists f \in d)[\text{Tran}(x) \ \& \ a \subset x \ \& \ \text{Count}(f, x)] ;$
- (c)  $\text{HC}(a) : \Leftrightarrow \exists x \exists f(a \subset x \ \& \ \text{Tran}(x) \ \& \ \text{Count}(f, x)) .$

Lemma 7.7.  $KP1^r$  proves:

- (a)  $Ad(d) \wedge a \in d \wedge HC(d,a) \rightarrow \exists X Rep(d,a,X)$ ;
- (b)  $Rep(d,a,S) \wedge Rep(d,b,T) \rightarrow (a = b \leftrightarrow S \approx T)$ ;
- (c)  $Rep(d,a,S) \wedge Rep(d,b,T) \rightarrow (a \in b \leftrightarrow S \tilde{\in} T)$ ;
- (d)  $Rep(d,a,T) \rightarrow HC(d,a)$ ;
- (e)  $Ad(d) \wedge T \in d \wedge REP(T) \rightarrow \exists x Rep(d,x,T)$ .

Proof. (a) is proved similar to Lemma 1.10; (b) - (e) follow from the definition of  $Rep$ .  $\therefore$

Theorem 7.5. In  $KP1^r$  we can show that the elements of  $HC$  are exactly the sets coded by representation trees; i.e.

$$KP1^r \vdash HC(a) \leftrightarrow \exists d (\exists T \in d) Rep(d,a,T).$$

This theorem follows from Lemma 7.7 and has an interesting consequence for the axiom of countability (C). Since  $HC$  satisfies (C), we conclude from Theorem 7.2, Corollary 7.2, Lemma 7.7 and Theorem 7.5 that the addition of (C) does not increase the proof-theoretic strength of  $KP1^r$ ,  $KP1^r + (IND_N)$  and  $KP1$ .

Corollary 7.3. We have for every sentence  $A$  of  $L_{Ad}$ :

- (a)  $KP1^r + (C) \vdash A \implies KP1^r \vdash A^{HC}$ ;
- (b)  $KP1^r + (IND_N) + (C) \vdash A \implies KP1^r + (IND_N) \vdash A^{HC}$ ;
- (c)  $KP1 + (C) \vdash A \implies KP1 \vdash A^{HC}$ .

## §8. THEORIES FOR RECURSIVELY INACCESSIBLE UNIVERSES.

In this section we study the relationships between subsystems of analysis with  $\Delta_2^1$  comprehension and set theories which formalize recursively inaccessible universes. The following formal systems will be considered:

1.  $KPi^r$ ,  $KPi^r + (IND_N)$ ,  $KPi$ . The theory  $KPi^r$  is  $KPu^r + (\text{Lim})$ ,  $KPi$  is  $KPu + (\text{Lim})$ . Hence  $KPi^r$  and  $KPi$  are  $KPu^r + KP1^r$  and  $KPu + KP1$ , respectively.

2.  $KP\beta^r$ ,  $KP\beta^r + (IND_N)$ ,  $KP\beta$ . The theory  $KP\beta^r$  is  $KPu^r + (\text{Axiom } \beta)$ ,  $KP\beta$  is  $KPu + (\text{Axiom } \beta)$ .

3.  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})_o$ ,  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})$ ,  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$ . The theory  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})_o$  consists of  $EA_o$  plus  $\Delta_2^1$  comprehension.  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})$  is  $EA$  plus  $\Delta_2^1$  comprehension.

Before we compare these theories proof-theoretically, we consider their intended models. Recall that  $\alpha$  is called recursively inaccessible if  $\alpha$  is an admissible limit of admissibles. We have:

$$(*) \quad \begin{aligned} \alpha \text{ recursively inaccessible} &\implies L_\alpha \models KPi \implies \\ L_\alpha \models KP\beta &\implies L_\alpha \cap \text{Pow}(N) \models (\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI}). \end{aligned}$$

The statement  $(*)$  follows from Theorem 8.1 and Theorem 8.2 below. The converse implications are not correct in general.

Example 1. Let  $\kappa$  be  $\lambda_1^L$ . It is clear that  $L_{\kappa^+}$  is not a model of  $KPi$ . On the other hand,  $L_{\kappa^+}$  is a model of the axiom  $\beta$ .

Example 2. Let  $\alpha$  be the smallest admissible ordinal such that

$L_\alpha \models \exists \xi (\xi \text{ uncountable cardinal})$ .

Then  $\alpha$  is of the form  $\kappa^+$ , where  $\kappa = \aleph_1^\alpha$ .  $L_\alpha$  is a model of full analysis  $A_2$  and therefore of  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$ .  $L_\alpha$  is not a model of the axiom  $\beta$ .

The first example goes back to Platek [42], the second one is due to Simpson [private communication]. However, if  $L_\alpha$  is a locally countable admissible set, then  $\alpha$  is recursively inaccessible iff  $L_\alpha \cap \text{Pow}(N)$  is a model of  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$ . We omit the proof of this assertion.

Theorem 8.1.

- (a)  $KP\beta^r$  is contained in  $KPi^r$ .
- (b)  $KP\beta^r + (\text{IND}_N)$  is contained in  $KPi^r + (\text{IND}_N)$ .
- (c)  $KP\beta$  is contained in  $KPi$ .

These inclusions are obvious from Theorem 4.6 where we proved the axiom  $\beta$  in  $KPi^0$ . The axiom  $\beta$  is also crucial for embedding  $\Delta_2^1$  comprehension into  $KP\beta^r$ .

Lemma 8.1. For every  $\Sigma_2^1$  formula  $A[x, Y]$  of  $L_2$  there exists a  $\Sigma_1$  formula  $B[x, y]$  of  $L_*$  such that  $KP\beta^r$  proves

$$x \in N \wedge y \in N \rightarrow (A[x, y] \leftrightarrow B[x, y]).$$

Proof. This lemma boils down to showing that each  $\Pi_1^1$  formula of  $L_2$  is provably equivalent to a  $\Sigma_1$  formula of  $L_*$ . So assume that  $C[x, Y]$  is  $\Pi_1^1$ . By the  $\Pi_1^1$  normal form theorem there exists a binary relation  $Q_{x, Y}$  with parameters  $x$  and  $Y$ , defined by the arithmetic formula  $Q[u, v, x, Y]$ , such that

$$(1) \text{KP}\beta^r \vdash x \in N \ \& \ y < N \rightarrow (C[x,y] \leftrightarrow \text{WF}(N, Q_{x,y})) .$$

By the axiom  $\beta$  and the well-foundedness of the  $\in$ -relation this implies

$$(2) \text{KP}\beta^r \vdash x \in N \ \& \ y < N \rightarrow (C[x,y] \leftrightarrow D[x,y]) ,$$

where  $D[x,y]$  is the  $\Sigma_1$  formula stating the existence of the collapsing function for  $(N, Q_{x,y})$ .  $\therefore$

Theorem 8.2.

- (a)  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})_o$  is contained in  $\text{KP}\beta^r$ .
- (b)  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})$  is contained in  $\text{KP}\beta^r + (\text{IND}_N)$ .
- (c)  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$  is contained in  $\text{KP}\beta$ .

Proof. By the previous lemma we reduce each  $\Sigma_2^1$  ( $\Pi_2^1$ ) formula of  $L_2$  to a  $\Sigma$  ( $\Pi$ ) formula of  $L_*$  and prove  $\Delta_2^1$  comprehension from  $\Delta$  separation. The remaining cases of this embedding theorem are treated as in §7 (cf. Lemma 7.1, Theorem 7.2).  $\therefore$

For the reduction of  $\text{KPi}$  to  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$  we come back to representation trees and the translation  $A^{\text{REP}}$  of every  $L_{\text{Ad}}$  formula  $A$ . In order to handle  $\Delta_o^1$  collection, we need the following lemma.

Lemma 8.2.

- (a)  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})_o$  proves the  $\Sigma_2^1$  axiom of choice.
- (b) For every  $\Pi_o^1 - \Pi_1^1$  formula  $A[x,Y]$  there exists a  $\Sigma_2^1$  formula  $C[x,Y]$  such that

$$(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})_o \vdash A[x,Y] \leftrightarrow C[x,Y] .$$

Proof. (a) is a standard consequence of the provability of  $\Pi_1^1$  uniformization in  $(\Delta_1^1\text{-CA})_o$  and hence in  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})_o$ ; cf. Lemma 7.3 and Feferman [18]. (b) follows from (a) by induction on the length of the formula  $A[x, Y]$ .  $\therefore$

Theorem 8.3. We have for every sentence  $A$  of  $L_{Ad}$ :

$$(a) KPi^r \vdash A \implies (\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})_o \vdash A^{\text{REP}};$$

$$(b) KPi^r + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash A \implies (\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) \vdash A^{\text{REP}};$$

$$(c) KPi \vdash A \implies (\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI}) \vdash A^{\text{REP}}.$$

Proof. In view of Corollary 7.2 we have only to take care of  $\Delta_o$  collection. So suppose that  $A[\underline{a}, x, y]$  is a  $\Delta_o$  formula of  $L_{Ad}$  and  $S, T$  are representation trees. We have to show:

$$(1) (\forall x \in T)(\exists y \in \text{REP}) A^{\text{REP}}[S, x, y] \rightarrow (\exists z \in \text{REP})(\forall x \in T)(\exists y \in z) A^{\text{REP}}[S, x, y].$$

The premise of this implication translates into

$$(2) \forall x \exists y (<2x> \in T \rightarrow \text{REP}(y) \& A^{\text{REP}}[S, T_{<2x>}, y]),$$

where the formula within the round brackets is  $\Pi_0^1\text{-}\Pi_1^1$  and therefore provably equivalent to a  $\Sigma_2^1$  formula by the lemma above.

With the  $\Sigma_2^1$  axiom of choice we find a set  $W$  such that

$$(3) \forall x (<2x> \in T \rightarrow \text{REP}((W)_x) \& A^{\text{REP}}[S, T_{<2x>}, (W)_x]).$$

By  $\Pi_0^1\text{-}\Pi_1^1$  comprehension we define the tree  $Z$ ,

$$(4) Z := \{<>\} \cup \{<2x> * t : <2x> \in T \& t \in (W)_x\},$$

which satisfies

$$(5) (\forall X \in T)(\exists Y \in Z) A^{\text{REP}}[\underline{s}, X, Y].$$

By Lemma 5.5 there exists a copy of  $Z$  in  $\text{REP}$ .

./.

In the ordinal analysis of the systems considered in this section, we have to distinguish between theories with full induction principles and theories with restricted induction. The latter correspond to iterations of the hyperjump less than  $\omega$  or  $\epsilon_0$  times, in the first case we have a virtual iteration of the hyperjump up to the first recursively inaccessible ordinal. Pohlers [44] and Jäger [31] discuss the iteration of hyperjump-like operations in proof theory and emphasize the importance of iterations along virtual well-orderings in the proof-theoretic analysis of theories like  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$  and  $\text{KPi}$ . The exact proof-theoretic bounds for  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})_0$  and  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})$  follow from the work of Buchholz, Feferman, Pohlers and Sieg, put together in [4]. Cut elimination and ordinal analysis for  $\text{KPi}^r$  and  $\text{KPi}^r + (\text{IND}_N)$  are carried through in Jäger [29].

Theorem 8.4.

$$(a) |\text{KPi}^r| = |\text{KPi}^r| = |(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})_0| = \overline{\Omega}_\omega^0.$$

$$(b) |\text{KPi}^r + (\text{IND}_N)| = |\text{KPi}^r + (\text{IND}_N)| = |(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA})| = \overline{\Omega}_{\epsilon_0}^0.$$

The strongest result obtained so far in the field of proof-theoretic ordinals is the calculation of the ordinal of  $\text{KPi}$  and equivalent theories; see Jäger-Pohlers [35]. An interesting application of the ordinal analysis for  $\text{KPi}$  and  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$  is the reduction of these classical systems to

Feferman's constructive theory  $T_0$  of functions and classes.

$T_0$  is introduced in [12,15], the reduction of KP $\beta$  to  $T_0$  is presented in Jäger [32].

Theorem 8.5.

$$|KP\beta| = |KP\beta| = |(\Delta_2^1 - CA) + (BI)| = |T_0| = \overline{\theta}^0(\overline{\theta}^1\varepsilon_{i_0+1}0)0.$$

The last remark refers to the axiom of countability (C) and to the class HC. The axiom of countability appears natural in our context, especially since

$$L_\alpha \models KP\beta \iff L_\alpha \models KP\beta \iff L_\alpha \cap \text{Pow}(N) \models (\Delta_2^1 - CA)$$

for all admissibles  $L_\alpha$  that satisfy (C). From a proof-theoretic standpoint it is therefore satisfactory that adding (C) as a further axiom does not increase the strength of these theories. As in section 7 we obtain:

Theorem 8.6. We have for every sentence A of  $L_{Ad}$ :

$$(a) KP\beta^r + (C) \vdash A \implies KP\beta^r \vdash A^{HC};$$

$$(b) KP\beta^r + (IND_N) + (C) \vdash A \implies KP\beta^r + (IND_N) \vdash A^{HC};$$

$$(c) KP\beta + (C) \vdash A \implies KP\beta \vdash A^{HC}.$$

APPENDIX. RAMIFIED SET THEORY.

Now we go back to section 2 and add the proofs of Theorem 2.2 and Theorem 2.4 concerning the admissible extension  $\text{Th}^e$  of a theory  $\text{Th}$ . Theorem 2.1 and Theorem 2.3 are proved analogously.

The strategy for the proof of Theorem 2.4 is the following: First we construct a system RS of ramified set theory over the ground language  $L_*$ . Then we show that each sentence of  $L_*$  which is provable in  $\text{Th}^e$  with length  $\alpha$  can be proved in RS by employing  $3^\alpha$  many levels of the ramified system. Cut elimination removes the ramified part but increases the length of the derivation. For the proof of Theorem 2.2 we use finite subsystems  $RS^k$ ,  $k < \omega$ , in order to ensure finite cut ranks and finite derivation trees.

A.1. The system RS.

Throughout this section we assume that  $\text{Th}$  is a theory in  $L_*$  which contains  $\text{ES}^0$ . The more general case that  $\text{Th}$  is formulated in the extension  $L_*(e_1, \dots, e_n)$  of  $L_*$  can be treated literally in the same way, but we dispense with the additional set constants  $e_1, \dots, e_n$  for notational simplicity.

The vocabulary of RS consists of the vocabulary of  $L_*$ , a constant  $M_\alpha$  for every ordinal  $\alpha$  and some auxiliary symbols. The terms of RS are defined inductively from the terms of  $L_*$ .

Inductive definition of the terms of RS.

1. Every term of  $L_*$  is a term of level 0.
2. Every  $M_\alpha$  is a term of level  $\alpha+1$ .
3. If  $\underline{a}$  are terms of level  $\leq \alpha$  and  $A[\underline{u}, \underline{v}]$  is an  $L_*$  formula, then  $\{\underline{x} \in M_\alpha : A^\alpha[\underline{x}, \underline{a}]\}$  is a term of level  $\alpha+1$ .

Here  $A^\alpha$  results from  $A$  by replacing each unrestricted quantifier  $\forall x(\dots)$  and  $\exists x(\dots)$  in  $A$  by  $(\forall x \in M_\alpha)(\dots)$  and  $(\exists x \in M_\alpha)(\dots)$ , respectively. If we write  $\{\underline{x} \in M_\alpha : B(\underline{x})\}$ , then we always assume that  $B(\underline{x})$  has the form  $A^\alpha[\underline{x}, \underline{a}]$  for some  $L_*$  formula  $A$  and terms  $\underline{a}$  of level  $\leq \alpha$ . The level of a term  $a$  is denoted by  $\text{lev}(a)$ .

Definition. The formulas of RS are all expressions  $A[\underline{a}]$  where  $A$  is a  $\Delta_0$  formula of  $L_*$  and  $\underline{a}$  are terms of RS.

Notational conventions.

1.  $u, v, w$  range over the free variables of  $L_*$ ;
2.  $a^\alpha, b^\alpha, c^\alpha, d^\alpha$  range over the RS terms of level  $\alpha$ ;  
 $a, b, c, d$  range over arbitrary RS terms.  
3.  $a \in b : \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} a \in b, & \text{if } \text{lev}(b) = 0; \\ 0 =_N 0, & \text{if } b \text{ is } M_\beta; \\ B(a), & \text{if } b \text{ is } \{\underline{x} \in M_\beta : B(\underline{x})\}. \end{cases}$
3. If  $\underline{a} = a_1, \dots, a_n$  and  $\underline{b} = b_1, \dots, b_n$ , then  
 $\underline{a} = \underline{b} : \Leftrightarrow (a_1 = b_1 \ \& \dots \& \ a_n = b_n);$   
 $\underline{a} \neq \underline{b} : \Leftrightarrow \neg \underline{a} = \underline{b}.$
4.  $\alpha \# \beta :=$  natural sum of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ .

$$5. \alpha < \beta : \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \alpha = 0, & \text{if } \beta = 0; \\ \alpha < \beta, & \text{if } \beta \neq 0. \end{cases}$$

$$6. \alpha + 1 := \begin{cases} \beta, & \text{if } \alpha = \beta + 1; \\ \alpha, & \text{otherwise;} \end{cases}$$

$$\alpha + (n+1) := (\alpha + n) + 1.$$

Inductive definition of the rank  $rn(A)$  of an RS formula A.

1. If  $a$  and  $b$  are terms of levels  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , then

$$rn(a \in b) := rn(a \notin b) := \max(\omega \cdot (3\alpha - 1), \omega \cdot (3\beta - 2) + 2).$$

2. If  $\underline{a} = a_1, \dots, a_n$  are terms of levels  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  and  $J$  is an  $n$ -ary relation symbol different from  $\in$ , then

$$rn(J(\underline{a})) := rn(\neg J(\underline{a})) := \omega \cdot \max(3\alpha_1 - 2, \dots, 3\alpha_n - 2).$$

$$3. rn(A \& B) := rn(A \vee B) := \max(rn(A), rn(B)) + 2.$$

$$4. rn((\forall x \in M_\alpha) A(x)) := rn((\exists x \in M_\alpha) A(x)) := \max(\omega \cdot 3\alpha, rn(A(u)) + 6).$$

5. If  $a$  is not of the form  $M_\beta$  and  $\text{lev}(a) = \alpha$ , then

$$rn((\forall x \in a) A(x)) := rn((\exists x \in a) A(x)) := \max(\omega \cdot (3\alpha - 2), rn(A(u)) + 6).$$

Lemma A.1.

$$(a) rn(\neg A) = rn(A).$$

$$(b) \text{If } \underline{a} \text{ are terms of level } \leq \alpha \text{ and } A[\underline{u}] \text{ is an } L_* \text{ formula,} \\ \text{then } rn(A^\alpha[\underline{a}]) < \omega \cdot 3\alpha + \omega.$$

$$(c) rn((\forall x \in a^\alpha)(x \in b^\beta)) \leq \max(\omega \cdot (3\alpha - 2), \omega \cdot (3\beta - 2) + \theta).$$

$$(d) rn(a^\alpha = b^\beta) < \max(\omega \cdot (3\alpha - 2) + \omega, \omega \cdot (3\beta - 2) + \omega).$$

$$(e) rn(A_i) + 1 < rn(A_0 \& A_1) \text{ for } i = 0 \text{ or } i = 1.$$

$$(f) rn((\exists x \in b)(a = x)) + 1 < rn(a \in b), \text{ if } \text{lev}(a) + \text{lev}(b) \geq 1.$$

- (g)  $\text{rn}(A(a)) + 1 < \max(\omega \cdot 3\beta, \text{rn}(A(u)) + 2)$ , if  $\text{lev}(a) \leq \beta$ .  
(h)  $\text{rn}(a \in b \ \& \ A(a)) + 1 < \text{rn}((\exists x \in b)A(x))$ , if  $\text{lev}(a) < \text{lev}(b)$ .

The proof of this lemma is straightforward and left to the reader. Now we turn to provability in RS which is defined for finite sets of RS formulas.

Basic rules of RS.

- (A1)  $\Gamma, \neg A, A$ , if A is an atomic formula of  $L_*$ ;  
(A2)  $\Gamma, A$ , if A is in TRUE;  
(A3)  $\Gamma, n \in N$ , if n is a number constant;  
(A4)  $\Gamma, a^0 \notin N$ , if  $a^0$  is not a number constant;  
(A5)  $\Gamma, S(a)$ , if  $\text{lev}(a) > 0$ ;  
(A6)  $\Gamma, \neg J(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ , if J is a relation symbol of  $L_1$  and  
 $\text{lev}(a_i) > 0$  for some i.

Normal rules of RS.

(\&), (\vee) as usual;

- (\forall) 
$$\frac{\Gamma, a \in b \rightarrow A(a) \text{ for all } a \text{ such that } \text{lev}(a) < \text{lev}(b)}{\Gamma, (\forall x \in b)A(x)}$$
- (\exists) 
$$\frac{\Gamma, a \in b \ \& \ A(a) \text{ for some } a \text{ such that } \text{lev}(a) < \text{lev}(b)}{\Gamma, (\exists x \in b)A(x)}$$

$$(\in) \frac{\Gamma, (\exists x \in b)(a = x)}{\Gamma, a \in b}, \text{ if } \text{lev}(a) + \text{lev}(b) > 0$$

$$(\notin) \frac{\Gamma, (\forall x \in b)(a \neq x)}{\Gamma, a \notin b}, \text{ if } \text{lev}(a) + \text{lev}(b) > 0$$

Cut rule of RS.

$$(\text{cut}) \frac{\Gamma, A \quad \Gamma, \neg A}{\Gamma} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{The rank of this cut is the rank} \\ \text{rn}(A) = \text{rn}(\neg A) \text{ of its cut formulas.} \end{array}$$

Inductive definition of RS  $\vdash_{\beta}^{\alpha} \Gamma$ .

1. If  $\Gamma$  is a basic rule of RS, then we have  $\text{RS} \vdash_{\beta}^{\alpha} \Gamma$  for all ordinals  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ .

2. If  $\text{RS} \vdash_{\beta}^{\alpha_i} \Gamma_i$  and  $\alpha_i < \alpha$  for every premise  $\Gamma_i$  of a normal rule or a cut of rank  $< \beta$ , then we have  $\text{RS} \vdash_{\beta}^{\alpha} \Gamma$  for the conclusion  $\Gamma$  of that inference.

$\text{RS} \vdash^{\alpha} \Gamma$  abbreviates  $\text{RS} \vdash_0^{\alpha} \Gamma$ ;  $\text{RS} \vdash^{<\alpha} \Gamma$  means  $\text{RS} \vdash_{\beta}^{\beta} \Gamma$  for some  $\beta < \alpha$ . By Lemma A.1 and standard techniques of predicative proof theory (cf. e.g. [47, 54]) we obtain cut elimination for RS.

Theorem A.1 (Cut elimination).

$$(a) \text{RS} \vdash_{\beta+1}^{\alpha} \Gamma \implies \text{RS} \vdash_{\beta}^{2^{\alpha}} \Gamma;$$

$$(b) \text{RS} \vdash_{\beta}^{\alpha} \Gamma \implies \text{RS} \vdash^{\phi^{\beta\alpha}} \Gamma.$$

Definition. Assumptions:  $A[\underline{u}]$  is a formula of the language  $L_*(M)$  of  $\text{Th}^B$ ;  $\Gamma[\underline{u}]$  is the set  $\{B_1[\underline{u}], \dots, B_n[\underline{u}]\}$  of  $L_*(M)$  formulas;  $\alpha \leq \beta$ ;  $\underline{a} = a_1, \dots, a_m$  are RS terms such that  $\text{lev}(a_i) \leq \alpha$  for  $i = 1, \dots, m$ .

(a)  $A^{(\alpha, \beta)}[\underline{a}]$  is the RS formula obtained from  $A[\underline{u}]$  by

(i) replacing the set constant  $M$  by  $M_0$  and the free variables  $\underline{u}$  by  $\underline{a}$ ;

(ii) replacing each unrestricted quantifier  $\forall x(\dots)$  by

$(\forall x \in M_\alpha)(\dots)$ ;

(iii) replacing each unrestricted quantifier  $\exists x(\dots)$  by

$(\exists x \in M_\beta)(\dots)$ .

(b)  $A^\alpha[\underline{a}]$  is  $A^{(\alpha, \alpha)}[\underline{a}]$ .

(c)  $\Gamma^{(\alpha, \beta)}[\underline{a}]$  is the set  $\{B_1^{(\alpha, \beta)}[\underline{a}], \dots, B_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}[\underline{a}]\}$ .

(d)  $\Gamma^\alpha[\underline{a}]$  is the set  $\Gamma^{(\alpha, \alpha)}[\underline{a}]$ .

Remark. The previous definition must not be confused with the definition of  $A^{(m, n)}$  and  $\Gamma^{(m, n)}$  in section 4.3.

Theorem A.2. If  $\Gamma$  is a finite set of  $L_*$  sentences, then

$$\text{RS} \vdash^\alpha \Gamma^0 \implies Z_*^\infty \vdash^\alpha \Gamma.$$

Theorem A.2 is easily proved by induction on  $\alpha$ . In combination with the cut elimination theorem it says that the ramified part of RS is not essential as far as provability of  $L_*$  formulas is considered. On the other hand, we need the ramified part of RS for the (partial) embedding of  $\text{Th}^B$  into RS.

Lemma A.2 (Logical completeness). If  $\alpha = \text{rn}(A)$ , then

$$\text{RS} \vdash^\alpha \neg A, A.$$

The proof of this lemma is by straightforward induction on  $\alpha$ . It is not possible to prove in RS all equality axioms  $a = b \rightarrow (A(a) \rightarrow A(b))$ , since RS does not comprise equality at level 0. The rules of RS, however, are adapted for lifting the equality axioms from level 0 to arbitrary levels.

Definition. Let  $\Omega E$  be the (finite) set of all formulas

$$\neg (\forall x \in M_0)(x = x),$$

$$\neg (\forall x \in M_0)(S(x) \leftrightarrow x \notin N),$$

$$\neg (\forall x \in M_0)(\forall z \in M_0)(x \in z \rightarrow S(z)),$$

$$\neg (\forall \underline{x} \in M_0)(I(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \underline{x} \in N),$$

$$\neg (\forall \underline{x} \in M_0)(\forall \underline{z} \in M_0)(\underline{x} = \underline{z} \& J(\underline{x}) \rightarrow J(\underline{z}))$$

for any relation symbol I of  $L_1$  and J of  $L_*$ .

Lemma A.3 (Equality). Suppose that  $\sigma = \text{rn}(A(\underline{a})) \# \text{rn}(A(\underline{b}))$  and  $\alpha = \omega \cdot (\sigma + 1)$ . Then we have:

$$\text{RS} \vdash^\alpha \Omega E, \underline{a} \neq \underline{b}, \neg A(\underline{a}), A(\underline{b}).$$

Proof by induction on  $\max(\text{rn}(A(\underline{a})), \text{rn}(A(\underline{b})))$ . If  $\underline{a}, \underline{b}$  are terms of level 0 and  $A(\underline{u})$  is an atomic formula, then the set  $\Omega E$  takes effect. Otherwise the assertion follows from the I.H., with some additional considerations if  $A(\underline{u})$  is of the form  $(\forall x \in u_i)B(x, \underline{u})$  or  $(\exists x \in u_i)B(x, \underline{u})$  and  $u_i$  is from the

list u. By symmetry we can confine ourselves to the second case. Depending on the form of a and b, we have to distinguish 9 cases. We carry through the argument for the most complicated one. Let c and d be arbitrary terms such that  $\text{lev}(c) < \text{lev}(a_i)$  and  $\text{lev}(d) < \text{lev}(b_i)$ . Define

$$(1) \sigma_c := \text{rn}(c \in a_i \wedge B(c, \underline{a})) \# \text{rn}(A(\underline{b})), \quad \alpha_c := \omega \cdot (\sigma_c + 1)$$

and assume that  $a_i = \{x \in M_\gamma : C(x)\}$  and  $b_i = \{x \in M_\delta : D(x)\}$ .

By the I.H., Lemma A.1 and Lemma A.2 we have:

$$(2) \text{RS} \vdash^{<\alpha_c} \text{OE}, \underline{a} \neq \underline{b}, c \neq d, \neg B(c, \underline{a}), B(d, \underline{b});$$

$$(3) \text{RS} \vdash^{<\alpha_c} \neg D(d), D(d);$$

$$(4) \text{RS} \vdash^{<\alpha} C(c), \neg C(c).$$

From (2) and (3) we obtain by (8), (3) and (v)

$$(5) \text{RS} \vdash^{<\alpha_c} \text{OE}, \underline{a} \neq \underline{b}, \neg D(d) \vee c \neq d, \neg B(c, \underline{a}), A(\underline{b})$$

which yields by (V) and (§)

$$(6) \text{RS} \vdash^{<\alpha} \text{OE}, \underline{a} \neq \underline{b}, c \notin b_i, \neg B(c, \underline{a}), A(\underline{b}).$$

From (4) and (6) we conclude by (8), (3) and (v) in the following order:

$$(7) \text{RS} \vdash^{<\alpha} \text{OE}, \underline{a} \neq \underline{b}, C(c) \wedge c \notin b_i, \neg C(c), \neg B(c, \underline{a}), A(\underline{b});$$

$$(8) \text{RS} \vdash^{<\alpha} \text{OE}, \underline{a} \neq \underline{b}, (\exists x \in a_i)(x \notin b_i), \neg C(c), \neg B(c, \underline{a}), A(\underline{b});$$

$$(9) \text{RS} \vdash^{<\alpha} \text{OE}, \underline{a} \neq \underline{b}, c \in a_i \rightarrow \neg B(c, \underline{a}), A(\underline{b}).$$

An application of (V) implies the conclusion.

./.

Lemma A.4. If  $a$  is a term of level  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta = \omega \cdot 3\alpha + \omega$ ,  $\gamma \geq \alpha$  and  $\delta = \omega \cdot 3\gamma + \omega + \omega$ , then we have:

- (a)  $RS \vdash^{<\beta} DE, a = a ;$
- (b)  $RS \vdash^{<\beta} DE, a \in M_\gamma ;$
- (c)  $RS \vdash^{<\delta} DE, (\forall x \in M_\gamma)(\forall y \in x)(y \in M_\gamma) ;$
- (d)  $RS \vdash^{<\omega} DE, a \in b \rightarrow S(b) .$

Lemma A.5. If  $\sigma = rn((\exists x \in M_\beta)(x \in a \ \& \ A(x))) \neq rn((\exists x \in a)A(x))$ , then

$$RS \vdash^{\omega \cdot (\sigma+1)} DE, (\forall x \in M_\beta)(x \notin a \ \vee \ \neg A(x)), (\exists x \in a)A(x) .$$

Lemma A.6. If  $A[u, v]$  is a  $\Delta_0$  formula of  $L_*$  and  $a, b$  are terms of level  $\leq \alpha$ , then we have for all  $\beta > \alpha$  and  $\gamma = \omega \cdot 3\alpha + \omega + \omega$ :

$$RS \vdash^{<\gamma} (\exists z \in M_\beta)(z = \{x \in a : A[x, b]\}) .$$

The proof of Lemma A.4 is obvious; Lemma A.5 follows from Lemma A.2 and Lemma A.3; for the proof of Lemma A.6 we choose  $c^{\alpha+1} := \{x \in M_\alpha : x \in a \ \& \ A[x, b]\}$  as witness for  $z$ .

Definition. A finite set  $\Lambda$  of  $L_*(M)$  formulas is called suitable if each element of  $\Lambda$  has the form

$$\exists x_1 \dots \exists x_n \neg A[x_1, \dots, x_n, \underline{a}] ,$$

where  $A[u_1, \dots, u_n, \underline{v}]$  is a Kripke-Platek axiom of  $\text{Th}^\theta$ .

Lemma A.7. Assume that  $\Lambda[\underline{u}]$  is a suitable set of  $L_*(M)$  formulas. If

$$z_*^\infty \vdash^\alpha \Lambda[\underline{u}], \Gamma[\underline{u}] ,$$

then we have, for all  $\beta$ ,  $\sigma \geq \beta + 3^\alpha$ ,  $\rho = \omega * 3\sigma + \omega$ ,  $\gamma = \epsilon_{\sigma \# \alpha}$  and all terms  $\underline{a}$  of level  $\leq \beta$ ,

$$RS \vdash_\rho^Y DE, \Gamma^{(\beta, \sigma)}[\underline{a}] .$$

The proof of this lemma proceeds by induction on  $\alpha$  and uses Lemma A.4 - Lemma A.6. It is analogous to the proofs of Lemma 3.4 and Lemma 4.3, and therefore we can omit details.

Lemma A.8. Suppose that  $\text{Th}_\infty^e \vdash^\alpha \Gamma[\underline{u}]$ . Then there exist universal closures  $A_1, \dots, A_n$  of axioms of the theory  $\text{Th}$  such that

$$RS \vdash_\rho^{Y+\omega} \{\neg A_1^0, \dots, \neg A_n^0\}, \Gamma^{(\beta, \sigma)}[\underline{a}]$$

for all  $\beta$ ,  $\sigma \geq \beta + 3^\alpha$ ,  $\rho = \omega * 3\sigma + \omega$ ,  $\gamma = \epsilon_{\sigma \# \alpha}$  and all terms  $\underline{a}$  of level  $\leq \beta$ .

Proof. Since  $\text{Th}_\infty^e \vdash^\alpha \Gamma[\underline{u}]$ , there exist finite sets  $\Lambda_0$ ,  $\Lambda_1$ ,  $\Lambda_2$ ,  $\Lambda_3$  of  $L_*(M)$  formulas such that

$$(1) z_*^\infty \vdash^\alpha \Lambda_0, \Lambda_1, \Lambda_2, \Lambda_3, \Gamma[\underline{u}]$$

and

- (i) each element of  $\Lambda_0$  is the negation of the universal closure of an ontological or equality axiom of ES;
- (ii) each element of  $\Lambda_1$  is the negation of the universal

closure of an M-axiom of  $\text{Th}^e$ ;

- (iii) each element of  $\Lambda_2$  is the negation of a Th-axiom of  $\text{Th}^e$ ;
- (iv) each element of  $\Lambda_3$  is the negation of the universal closure of a Kripke-Platek axiom of  $\text{Th}^e$ .

By the previous lemma this implies

$$(2) \text{RS} \vdash_{\rho}^{\gamma} \text{OE}, \Lambda_0^{(\beta, \sigma)}, \Lambda_1^{(\beta, \sigma)}, \Lambda_2^{(\beta, \sigma)}, \Gamma^{(\beta, \sigma)}[\underline{a}] .$$

Observe that  $\Lambda_2^{(\beta, \sigma)} = \Lambda_2^0$  and  $\text{RS} \vdash^{\gamma} \text{OE}, A$  for all formulas  $A$  in  $\Lambda_0^{(\beta, \sigma)} \cup \Lambda_1^{(\beta, \sigma)}$ . Therefore several cuts yield

$$(3) \text{RS} \vdash_{\rho}^{\gamma+\omega} \text{OE}, \Lambda_2^0, \Gamma^{(\beta, \sigma)}[\underline{a}] .$$

This completes the proof. ./.

Theorem A.3. Let  $A$  be a sentence of  $L_*$  and  $\alpha$  an  $\epsilon$ -number. Then

$$\text{Th}_\infty^e \vdash^{<\alpha} A^M \implies \text{Th}_\infty \vdash^{<\phi\alpha 0} A .$$

Proof. Assume  $\text{Th}_\infty^e \vdash^{<\alpha} A^M$ . By Lemma A.8 there exist universal closures  $B_1, \dots, B_n$  of axioms of Th and a  $\beta < \alpha$  such that

$$(1) \text{RS} \vdash_{\rho}^{\gamma+\omega} \{\neg B_1^0, \dots, \neg B_n^0\}, A^0$$

for  $\sigma = 3^\beta$ ,  $\rho = \omega * 3\sigma + \omega$  and  $\gamma = \epsilon_{\sigma \# \alpha}$ . Since  $\phi\rho(\gamma+\omega) < \phi\alpha 0$ , cut elimination in RS yields

$$(2) \text{RS} \vdash^{<\phi\alpha 0} \{\neg B_1^0, \dots, \neg B_n^0\}, A^0 .$$

The claim follows by Theorem A.2. ./.

### A.2. The finite subsystems $RS^k$ , $k < \omega$ .

The way through the ramified system RS does not work for proving Theorem 2.2, even if we consider finite levels only. In this case we would have to deal with infinite cut ranks and infinite derivations and could not go back to the formal theory Th directly. In the following we therefore consider finite subsystems  $RS^k$  of RS for all  $k < \omega$  where the term formation is severely restricted.

The vocabulary of  $RS^k$  is that of RS. We start with a fixed but arbitrary enumeration  $(F_i : i < \omega)$  of all formulas of  $L_*$ . Depending on this enumeration, we define the  $k$ -terms and  $k$ -formulas for every  $k < \omega$ .

#### Inductive definition of the $k$ -terms.

1. Every term of  $L_*$  is a  $k$ -term of level 0.
2. Every  $M_n$  with  $n < \omega$  is a  $k$ -term of level  $n+1$ .
3. If  $A[u, v]$  is a formula of the list  $(F_0, \dots, F_k)$  and  $a$  are  $k$ -terms of level  $\leq n$ , then  $\{x \in M_n : A^n[x, a]\}$  is a  $k$ -term of level  $n+1$ .

$Ter_n^k$  denotes the class of all  $k$ -terms  $a$  such that  $lev(a) < n$ .

Remark. Every  $k$ -term is a term of RS.

Definition. A formula  $A$  of RS is called a  $k$ -formula if all terms in  $A$  are  $k$ -terms.

Inductive definition of the k-rank  $\text{rn}^k(A)$  of a k-formula A.

1. If  $a$  and  $b$  are k-terms of level 0, then

$$\text{rn}^k(a \in b) := \text{rn}^k(a \notin b) := 0.$$

2. If  $a$  and  $b$  are k-terms such that  $\text{lev}(a) + \text{lev}(b) > 0$ , then

$$\text{rn}^k(a \in b) := \text{rn}^k(a \notin b) := \text{rn}^k((\exists x \in b)(a = x)) + 2.$$

3. If  $\underline{a}$  are k-terms and  $J$  is a relation symbol different from  $\in$ , then

$$\text{rn}^k(J(\underline{a})) := \text{rn}^k(\neg J(\underline{a})) := 0.$$

$$4. \text{rn}^k(A \& B) := \text{rn}^k(A \vee B) := \max(\text{rn}^k(A), \text{rn}^k(B)) + 2.$$

$$5. \text{rn}^k((\forall x \in a^n)A(x)) := \text{rn}^k((\exists x \in a^n)A(x)) := \\ \sup(\text{rn}^k(d \in a^n \& A(d)) + 2 : d \in \text{Ter}_n^k).$$

In order to show that  $\text{rn}^k(A) < \omega$  for every k-formula A, we define an equivalence relation  $\sim$  on the set of all k-terms.

Inductive definition of  $a \sim b$  for all k-terms  $a, b$ .

1.  $a \sim b$  if  $\text{lev}(a) = \text{lev}(b) = 0$ .

2.  $M_n \sim M_n$ .

3. If  $\underline{a} = a_1, \dots, a_m$  and  $\underline{b} = b_1, \dots, b_m$  are k-terms of level  $\leq n$  and  $a_i \sim b_i, \dots, a_m \sim b_m$ , then  $\{x \in M_n : A^n[x, \underline{a}]\} \sim \{y \in M_n : A^n[y, \underline{b}]\}$ .

Remark. The equivalence classes of the terms in  $\text{Ter}_n^k$  obviously form a finite partition of  $\text{Ter}_n^k$ .  $\text{rn}^k(A) < \omega$  for all k-formulas A therefore follows from the lemma below, which is clear by the previous definition.

Lemma A.9. If  $A(\underline{a})$  is a k-formula,  $a_1, \dots, a_m \in \text{Ter}_n^k$  and  $a_i \sim b_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, m$ , then  $\text{rn}^k(A(a_1, \dots, a_m)) = \text{rn}^k(A(b_1, \dots, b_m))$ .

Corollary.  $\text{rn}^k(A) < \omega$  for every  $k$ -formula  $A$ .

$\text{RS}^k$  is ramified set theory for  $k$ -formulas. It is similar to RS with all axioms and rules restricted to  $k$ -formulas.

Basic rules of  $\text{RS}^k$ .

(A1)  $\Gamma, \neg A, A$ , if  $\text{rn}^k(A) = 0$ ;

(A2)  $\Gamma, A$ , if  $A$  is in TRUE;

(A3)  $\Gamma, S(a)$ , if  $\text{lev}(a) > 0$ ;

(A4)  $\Gamma, \neg J(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ , if  $J$  is a relation symbol of  $L_1$  and  $\text{lev}(a_i) > 0$  for some  $i$ .

Normal rules of  $\text{RS}^k$ .

(&), (v) as usual;

( $\forall$ ) 
$$\frac{\Gamma, a \in b \rightarrow A(a) \text{ for all } a \in \text{Ter}_{\text{lev}(b)}^k}{\Gamma, (\forall x \in b)A(x)}$$

( $\exists$ ) 
$$\frac{\Gamma, a \in b \& A(a) \text{ for some } a \in \text{Ter}_{\text{lev}(b)}^k}{\Gamma, (\exists x \in b)A(x)}$$

( $\in$ ) 
$$\frac{\Gamma, (\exists x \in b)(a = x)}{\Gamma, a \in b}, \text{ if } \text{lev}(a) + \text{lev}(b) > 0$$

( $\notin$ ) 
$$\frac{\Gamma, (\forall x \in b)(a \neq x)}{\Gamma, a \notin b}, \text{ if } \text{lev}(a) + \text{lev}(b) > 0$$

Cut rule of RS<sup>k</sup>.

$$\text{(cut)} \frac{\Gamma, A \quad \Gamma, \neg A}{\Gamma} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{The rank of this cut is the } k\text{-rank} \\ r_n^k(A) = r_n^k(\neg A) \text{ of its cut formulas.} \end{array}$$

$RS^k \vdash_n^m \Gamma$  is defined according to  $RS \vdash_\beta^\alpha \Gamma$ .  $RS^k \vdash \Gamma$  means  $RS^k \vdash_n^m \Gamma$  for some  $m, n < \omega$ ;  $RS^k \vdash_0 \Gamma$  is written, if there exists an  $m < \omega$  such that  $RS^k \vdash_0^m \Gamma$ . Cut elimination for  $RS^k$  is obvious by the definition of the  $k$ -rank and the corollary above.

Theorem A.4 (Cut elimination).

- (a)  $RS^k \vdash_{n+1}^m \Gamma \iff RS^k \vdash_n^{2^m} \Gamma$  ;  
(b)  $RS^k \vdash \Gamma \iff RS^k \vdash_0 \Gamma$  .

Theorem A.5. If  $\Gamma$  is a finite set of  $L_*$  formulas, then

$$RS^k \vdash_0^m \Gamma^0 \iff z_* \vdash \Gamma$$
.

The proof of this lemma is by straightforward induction on  $m$ . The following Lemma A.10 - Lemma A.13 and Theorem A.6 are the finite versions of Lemma A.2 - Lemma A.8 and Theorem A.3; the proofs are literally the same.

Lemma A.10. For all  $k$ -formulas  $A, B(u)$ , all  $k$ -terms  $a, b$ , all natural numbers  $n$  and all  $m \geq \text{lev}(a)$ :

- (a)  $RS^k \vdash \neg A, A$  ;  
(b)  $RS^k \vdash \text{OE}, a \neq b, \neg B(a), B(b)$  ;

- (c)  $RS^k \vdash OE, a = a \ \& \ (b \in a \rightarrow S(a))$  ;
- (d)  $RS^k \vdash OE, a \in M_m \ \& \ Tran(M_m)$  ;
- (e)  $RS^k \vdash OE, (\forall x \in M_n)(x \notin a \vee \neg B(x)), (\exists x \in a)B(x)$  .

Lemma A.11. Let  $A[u, \underline{v}]$  be a  $\Delta_0$  formula of  $L_*$  such that the formula  $u \in w \ \& \ A[u, \underline{v}]$  belongs to the list  $(F_0, \dots, F_k)$ . Then we have for all k-terms  $a, \underline{b}$  of level  $\leq m$ :

$$RS^k \vdash (\exists z \in M_{m+1})(z = \{x \in a : A[x, \underline{b}]\}) .$$

Definition.

(a) Let  $A[u, \underline{v}]$  be a  $\Delta_0$  formula of  $L_*$ . The formula

$$u \in w \ \& \ A[u, \underline{v}]$$

is called the critical formula of every instance of  $(\Delta_0\text{-Sep})$

$$\exists z(z = \{x \in a : A[x, \underline{b}]\})$$

for arbitrary  $L_*(M)$  terms  $a, \underline{b}$ .

(b) For every suitable set  $\Lambda$  of  $L_*(M)$  formulas we define  $h(\Lambda)$  to be the least  $k < \omega$  with the following property:

If  $\exists x \neg A[\underline{x}, \underline{a}]$  is in  $\Lambda$  and  $A[\underline{u}, \underline{a}]$  is an instance of  $(\Delta_0\text{-Sep})$ , then its critical formula belongs to the list  $(F_0, \dots, F_k)$ .

Lemma A.12. Assume that  $\Lambda[\underline{u}]$  is a suitable set of  $L_*(M)$  formulas and  $\Gamma[\underline{u}]$  an arbitrary finite set of  $L_*(M)$  formulas. If

$$L_* \vdash_0^n \Lambda[\underline{u}], \Gamma[\underline{u}] ,$$

then we have, for all  $m, s \geq m+3^n, k \geq h(\Lambda[\underline{u}])$  and all k-terms

a of level  $\leq m$ ,

$$RS^k \vdash \partial\epsilon, r^{(m,s)}[\underline{a}] .$$

Lemma A.13. If  $\text{Th}^e \vdash_0^n r[\underline{u}]$ , then there exist universal closures  $A_1, \dots, A_t$  of axioms of the theory  $\text{Th}$  and a number  $k_0 < \omega$  such that

$$RS^k \vdash \{\neg A_1^0, \dots, \neg A_t^0\}, r^{(m,s)}[\underline{a}]$$

for all numbers  $m, s \geq m+3^n$ ,  $k > k_0$  and all  $k$ -terms  $\underline{a}$  of level  $\leq m$ .

Theorem A.6. If  $A$  is a sentence of  $L_*$ , then

$$\text{Th}^e \vdash A^M \implies \text{Th} \vdash A .$$

Proof. By Lemma A.13 and Theorem A.5; c.f. proof of Theorem A.3.  $\therefore$

The next remarks refer to  $\text{Th}^e + (I_N)$  and  $\text{Th}^e + (I_N) + (I_\epsilon)$ . Theorem 2.2(b) is proved as Theorem A.6, with Lemma A.14 below used to reduce  $(I_N)$  in  $\text{Th}^e$  to  $(\text{IND}_N)$  in  $\text{Th}$ . This lemma also reduces  $(I_\epsilon)$  in  $\text{Th}^e$  to  $(\text{IND}_\epsilon)$  in  $\text{Th}$  since all terms in  $RS^k$  are of finite level.

Lemma A.14. For every  $k$ -formula  $A(u)$  there exists an  $L_*$  formula  $A_*(u)$  such that

$$RS^k \vdash (\forall x \in M_0)(A(x) \leftrightarrow A_*^0(x)) .$$

Proof. We define  $A_*(u)$  by induction on  $\text{rn}^k(A(u))$ .

1. If  $J$  is an arbitrary relation symbol,  $\underline{a}$  a sequence of  $k$ -terms of level 0 and  $A(u)$  the formula  $J(\underline{a})$  or  $\neg J(\underline{a})$ , then  
 $A_*(u) := A(u).$

2. If  $J$  is a relation symbol different from  $\in$  and  $\underline{a}$  a sequence of  $k$ -terms not all of level 0, then

$$A_*(u) := \begin{cases} 0 =_N 1, & \text{if } A(u) \text{ is } J(\underline{a}); \\ 0 =_N 0, & \text{if } A(u) \text{ is } \neg J(\underline{a}). \end{cases}$$

3. If  $a$  and  $b$  are  $k$ -terms such that  $\text{lev}(a) + \text{lev}(b) > 0$ , then

$$A_*(u) := \begin{cases} (\exists x \in b)(a = x)_*, & \text{if } A(u) \text{ is } a \in b; \\ (\forall x \in b)(a \neq x)_*, & \text{if } A(u) \text{ is } a \notin b. \end{cases}$$

$$4. A_*(u) := \begin{cases} B_*(u) \& C_*(u), & \text{if } A(u) \text{ is } B(u) \& C(u); \\ B_*(u) \vee C_*(u), & \text{if } A(u) \text{ is } B(u) \vee C(u). \end{cases}$$

5. Suppose that  $A(u)$  is the formula  $(\forall x \in b)B(x,u)$  and  $b$  a  $k$ -term of level  $m$ . We remember that  $\text{Ter}_m^k$  splits into finitely many equivalence classes. For every equivalence class  $K$  there exists an expression  $t_K(\underline{v})$  such that every element of  $K$  can be written as  $t_K(\underline{c})$  for some terms  $\underline{c}$  of level 0. Then we define:

$$A_*(u) := \bigwedge_{\substack{K \text{ equiv.} \\ \text{class}}} (\forall x \in M_0)(t_K(x) \in b \rightarrow A(t_K(x), u))_*$$

6. If  $A(u)$  is the formula  $(\exists x \in b)B(x,u)$ , we define  $A_*(u)$  accordingly.

It is easy to see that the claim is satisfied in each case.  $\therefore$ .

Theorem A.7. If  $A$  is a sentence of  $L_*$ , then

$$(a) \text{Th}^e + \{I_N\} \vdash A^M \implies \text{Th} + (\text{IND}_N) \vdash A;$$

$$(b) \text{Th}^e + \{I_N\} + \{I_\in\} \vdash A^M \implies \text{Th} + (\text{IND}_N) + (\text{IND}_\in) \vdash A.$$

Proof. By Theorem A.6 and Lemma A.14.

.//.

References.

1. J. Barwise. Admissible Sets and Structures. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York (1975).
2. E. Bishop. Foundations of Constructive Analysis. McGraw-Hill, New York (1967).
3. W. Buchholz. Eine Erweiterung der Schnitteliminationsmethode. Habilitationsschrift, München (1977).
4. W. Buchholz, S. Feferman, W. Pohlers and W. Sieg. Iterated Inductive Definitions and Subsystems of Analysis: Recent Proof-Theoretical Studies. Springer Lecture Notes in Maths. 897 (1981).
5. A. Cantini. A note on the theory of admissible sets with  $\epsilon$ -induction restricted to formulas with one quantifier and related systems. Preprint, München (1984).
6. A. Cantini. A note on a predicatively reducible theory of iterated elementary induction. Preprint, München (1983).
7. S. Feferman. Transfinite recursive progressions of axiomatic theories. J. Symbolic Logic 27 (1962).
8. S. Feferman. Systems of predicative analysis. J. Symbolic Logic 29 (1964).
9. S. Feferman. Systems of predicative analysis , II: Representations of ordinals. J. Symbolic Logic 33 (1968).
10. S. Feferman. Formal theories for transfinite iterations of generalized inductive definitions and some subsystems of analysis. Intuitionism and Proof Theory. North Holland, Amsterdam (1970).
11. S. Feferman. Predicatively reducible systems of set theory. Set Theory II. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, R.I. (1974).

12. S. Feferman. A language and axioms for explicit mathematics. *Algebra and Logic*. Springer Lecture Notes in Maths. 450 (1975).
13. S. Feferman. Theories of finite type related to mathematical practice. *Handbook of Mathematical Logic*. North Holland, Amsterdam (1977).
14. S. Feferman. A more perspicuous formal system for predicativity. *Konstruktionen versus Propositionen I*. Walter de Gruyter, Berlin (1978).
15. S. Feferman. Constructive theories of functions and classes. *Logic Colloquium '78*. North Holland, Amsterdam (1979).
16. S. Feferman. Iterated inductive fixed-point theories; application to Hancock's conjecture. *Patras Logic Symposium*. North Holland, Amsterdam (1982).
17. S. Feferman. Gödel's incompleteness theorems and the reflective closure of theories. Preprint, Stanford (1981).
18. S. Feferman. Explicit Content of Actual Mathematical Analysis. In preparation.
19. S. Feferman and G. Jäger. Choice principles, the bar rule and autonomously iterated comprehension schemes in analysis. *J. Symbolic Logic* 48 (1983).
20. H. Friedman. Subsystems of set theory and analysis. Ph.D. Thesis, M.I.T. (1967).
21. H. Friedman. Some systems of second order arithmetic and their use. *Proceedings of the International Congress of Mathematicians*, Vancouver 1974, Vol. I. Canadian Math. Congress (1975).
22. H. Friedman. Systems of second order arithmetic with restricted induction I, II (abstracts). *J. Symbolic Logic* 41 (1976).

23. H. Friedman. Set theoretic foundations for constructive analysis. *Annals of Mathematics* 105 (1977).
24. H. Friedman and R. Jensen. Note on admissible ordinals. *The Syntax and Semantics of Infinitary Languages*. Springer Lecture Notes in Maths. 72 (1968).
25. H. Friedman, K. McAlloon and S.G. Simpson. A finite combinatorial principle which is equivalent to the 1-consistency of predicative analysis. *Patras Logic Symposium*. North Holland, Amsterdam (1982).
26. S. Friedman. HC of an admissible set. *J. Symbolic Logic* 44 (1979).
27. G. Gentzen. Die Widerspruchsfreiheit der reinen Zahlentheorie. *Math. Ann.* 112 (1936).
28. G. Jäger. Beweistheorie von KPN. *Archiv f. Math. Logik u. Grundl.* 20 (1980).
29. G. Jäger. Die konstruktible Hierarchie als Hilfsmittel zur beweistheoretischen Untersuchung von Teilsystemen der Mengenlehre und Analysis. *Dissertation*, München (1979).
30. G. Jäger. Zur Beweistheorie der Kripke-Platek-Mengenlehre über den natürlichen Zahlen. *Archiv f. Math. Logik u. Grundl.* 22 (1982).
31. G. Jäger. Iterating admissibility in proof theory. *Proceedings of the Herbrand Symposium. Logic Colloquium '81*. North Holland, Amsterdam (1982).
32. G. Jäger. A well-ordering proof for Feferman's theory  $T_0$ . *Archiv f. Math. Logik u. Grundl.* 23 (1983).
33. G. Jäger. A version of Kripke-Platek set theory which is conservative over Peano arithmetic. *Zeitschr. f. math. Logik u. Grundl. d. Math.* 30 (1984).

34. G. Jäger. The strength of admissibility without foundation. *J. Symbolic Logic* 49 (1984).
35. G. Jäger and W. Pohlers. Eine beweistheoretische Untersuchung von  $(\Delta_2^1\text{-CA}) + (\text{BI})$  und verwandter Systeme. *Sitzungsberichte der Bayerischen Akademie der Wissenschaften* (1982).
36. G. Kreisel. Ordinal logics and the characterization of informal concepts of proof. *Proceedings of the International Congress of Mathematicians at Edinburgh 1958.* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge (1960).
37. G. Kreisel. A survey of proof theory. *J. Symbolic Logic* 33 (1968).
38. G. Kreisel. Principles of proof and ordinals implicit in given concepts. *Intuitionism and Proof Theory.* North Holland, Amsterdam (1970).
39. G. Kreisel and G.E. Sacks. Metarecursive sets. *J. Symbolic Logic* 30 (1965).
40. S. Kripke. Transfinite recursion on admissible ordinals I, II (abstracts). *J. Symbolic Logic* 29 (1964).
41. P. Martin-Löf. An intuitionistic theory of types: predicative part. *Logic Colloquium '73.* North Holland, Amsterdam (1975).
42. R. Platek. Foundations of recursion theory. Ph.D. Thesis and supplement, Stanford (1966).
43. W. Pohlers. Beweistheorie der iterierten induktiven Definitionen. *Habilitationsschrift,* München (1977).
44. W. Pohlers. Admissibility in proof theory, a survey. *Logic, Methodology and Philosophy of Science VI.* North Holland, Amsterdam (1982).

45. H. Rogers. Theory of Recursive Functions and Effective Computability. McGraw-Hill, New York (1967).
46. K. Schütte. Eine Grenze für die Beweisbarkeit der transfiniten Induktion in der verzweigten Typenlogik. Archiv f. Math. Logik u. Grundl. 7 (1964).
47. K. Schütte. Proof Theory. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York (1977).
48. J.R. Shoenfield. Mathematical Logic. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass. (1967).
49. J.R. Shoenfield. Axioms of set theory. Handbook of Mathematical Logic. North Holland, Amsterdam (1977).
50. W. Sieg. Trees in metamathematics (Theories of inductive definitions and subsystems of analysis). Ph.D. Thesis, Stanford (1977).
51. S.G. Simpson.  $\Sigma_1^1$  and  $\Pi_1^1$  transfinite induction. Logic Colloquium '80. North Holland, Amsterdam (1982).
52. S.G. Simpson. Set theoretic aspects of  $\text{ATR}_\alpha$ . Logic Colloquium '80. North Holland, Amsterdam (1982).
53. S.G. Simpson. Subsystems of Second Order Arithmetic. In preparation.
54. W.W. Tait. Normal derivability in classical logic. The Syntax and Semantics of Infinitary Languages. Springer Lecture Notes in Maths. 72 (1968).
55. W.W. Tait. Applications of the cut-elimination theorem to some subsystems of classical analysis. Intuitionism and Proof Theory. North Holland, Amsterdam (1970).
56. G. Takeuti. On the recursive functions of ordinal numbers. J. Math. Soc. Japan 12 (1960).

57. G. Takeuti. Recursive functions and arithmetic functions of ordinal numbers. Logic Methodology and Philosophy of Science II. North Holland, Amsterdam (1965).
58. G. Takeuti. Proof Theory. North Holland, Amsterdam (1975).
59. A.M. Turing. Systems of logic based on ordinals. Proceedings of the London Mathematical Society, ser.2, vol. 45 (1939).

Present address:

ETH Zürich  
Mathematik  
ETH-Zentrum  
CH-8092 Zürich  
Switzerland

Finito di stampare  
nel novembre 1986  
dalla « L.V.G. »  
Azzate (Varese)